

> THIS IS **THE WAY**

> THIS IS **NORTEL**

Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000

# IP Configuration Management

---

NN10600-801

Document status: Standard  
Document issue: 7.2S2  
Document date: April 2006  
Product release: PCR7.2 and up  
Job function: Operations  
Type: NTP  
Language type: U.S. English

Copyright © 2006 Nortel.  
All Rights Reserved.

NORTEL, the globemark design, and the NORTEL corporate logo are trademarks of Nortel.



---

# Contents

---

<b>What's new</b>	<b>8</b>
Secure shell (Ssh) on Nortel Multiservice Switch 15000 and 20000	8
Standard VPT for non-ATM SPVC	8
<b>IP configuration</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>VIPR configuration</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>VR access media configuration</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>VR ATM MPE access media configuration</b>	<b>15</b>
Configuring an ATM MPE interface for IP traffic	17
Configuring an ATM PVC for an ATM MPE interface	19
Configuring an ATM MPE soft PVC source to ATM MPE soft PVC destination connection	22
Configuring an ATM MPE soft PVC source to ATM UNI interface connection	26
Configuring an ATM UNI or virtual UNI interface soft PVC source to interface soft PVC source to ATM MPE soft PVC destination connection	30
<b>Frame relay DTE access media configuration</b>	<b>34</b>
Adding a frame relay DTE interface	37
Configuring frame relay DTE with Framers	38
Configuring frame relay DTE with vFramer	40
Configuring a direct connection for a frame relay DTE interface	43
Customizing static Dci attributes	45
Customizing dynamic Dci attributes	47
Customizing Hq attributes	49
Customizing Leq attributes	51
<b>VR IP-optimized DLCI access media configuration</b>	<b>53</b>
Configuring an IP-optimized DLCI	55
Configuring IpCos on an IP-optimized DLCI	57
<b>Frame relay DTE to IP-optimized DLCI migration</b>	<b>58</b>
Migrating from a physical (Framer) or logical connection with service interruption	60
Migrating from a physical (Framer) or logical connection without service interruption	62
Migrating from a direct connection	65



---

<b>VR Ethernet access media configuration</b>	<b>67</b>
Linking an Ethernet interface in port mode	69
Linking an Ethernet interface in VLAN mode	70
<b>VR PPP access media configuration</b>	<b>72</b>
Configuring a hardware connection for a PPP interface	75
Configuring a PPP interface for IP traffic	77
Customizing Ppp Link attributes	78
Customizing Ppp Lqm attributes	80
Customizing Ppp Leq attributes	81
Configuring the MLPPP bundle and links	83
Adding the Override component	85
Configuring the PPP Ewfq attributes	87
<b>Virtual router configuration</b>	<b>89</b>
Adding a virtual router	91
Configuring IP on a virtual router	93
<b>Protocol ports configuration</b>	<b>95</b>
Configuring and linking a protocol port to a media interface	97
Enabling IpPort on a protocol port	99
Associating a single IP logical interface with a single subconnection	101
<b>VR routing protocol configuration</b>	<b>103</b>
<b>VR RIP configuration</b>	<b>106</b>
Configuring a RIP interface	108
Configuring RIP import policy	111
Configuring RIP export policy	113
<b>Migrating from RIPv1 to RIPv2</b>	<b>117</b>
<b>Migrating from RIP to OSPF</b>	<b>121</b>
<b>VR OSPF configuration</b>	<b>123</b>
Adding OSPF to a VR	126
Configuring an OSPF area	130
Configuring an OSPF interface	132
Changing an MD5 key on an authenticated OSPF link	136
Configuring OSPF export policy	138
Configuring OSPF virtual links	142
Changing an MD5 key on an authenticated OSPF virtual link	145
Configuring an aggregate policy	147
Configuring a stub area	149
<b>VR BGP-4 configuration</b>	<b>151</b>
Configuring a BGP-4 instance	154
Configuring a BGP-4 peer	156

---



---

Changing an MD5 key on an authenticated BGP-4 peer	160
Configuring BGP-4 import policy	162
Configuring BGP-4 export policy	167
Configuring BGP-4 AS weight policy	171
Configuring BGP-4 aggregate policy	172
Configuring AS path attributes for export policy	175
Configuring multi-exit discrimination for export policy	177
Inserting a dummy AS in update messages	178
Specifying destination networks for export policy	179
<b>Configuring VR static ARP</b>	<b>181</b>
<b>VR static route configuration</b>	<b>185</b>
Defining static protocol	188
Configuring static route	189
Configuring discard route entry for specific destinations	191
Configuring LpGroup	192
Configuring IP prerequisites and defaults for provisioning a protected default route	193
Defining protected default route	195
Enabling PDR heartbeat	197
<b>Configuring VR BOOTP routing protocol</b>	<b>198</b>
<b>VR IP features configuration</b>	<b>200</b>
<b>IP multicast configuration</b>	<b>203</b>
Configuring IP multicast	205
Configuring a policy for a multicast group	206
Configuring IP multicast using static routes	208
Configuring IP multicast using IGMP	210
Configuring IP multicast using PIM-SM	211
<b>Configuring PTP tunnels</b>	<b>213</b>
<b>VRRP configuration</b>	<b>215</b>
Enabling VRRP on participating Multiservice Switch VRs	217
Creating a VRRP virtual router	218
Example of creating a VRRP virtual router associated with an Ethernet interface in port mode	221
Example of creating a VRRP virtual router associated with a VLAN on an Ethernet interface	224
Setting the VRRP advertisement interval	227
Defining critical IP interfaces	229
<b>Configuring IP CPP on the VR</b>	<b>231</b>
<b>Virtual media configuration</b>	<b>233</b>
Adding a virtual media component	235

---



---

Configuring an always-up interface 237  
Configuring connectivity between virtual routers 239

---

**PPP (single-link or multi-link) to ATM interworking configuration 241**

Configuring a hardware connection for a Ppplwf interface 244  
Configuring a Ppplwf interface 246  
Customizing Ppplwf Link attributes 247  
Customizing Ppplwf Lqm attributes 249  
Configuring the MLPPP bundle and links 250  
Adding the Override component 253  
Configuring the AtmAp component 255

---

**IP monitoring and testing 258**

Monitoring the ATM MPE configuration 259  
    ATM MPE component states 259  
    ATM MPE soft PVC component states 259  
    Monitoring the AtmMpe component 260  
    Monitoring the AtmConnection subcomponent 260  
    Monitoring the llsFwdr component 261  
    Testing ATM MPE soft PVC connectivity 261  
    Testing ATM MPE soft PVC data flow 262  
Clearing or optimizing an ATM MPE soft PVC 264  
Monitoring the frame relay DTE configuration 265  
    Frame relay DTE component states 265  
    Frame relay DTE remote group component states 266  
    Frame relay DTE data link connection identifier component states 266  
    Monitoring the FrDte component 267  
    Monitoring the StDlci and Dlci subcomponent 267  
    Monitoring the Rg subcomponent 268  
Monitoring the Ethernet access media configuration 269  
    Monitoring the LanApplication component 269  
Monitoring the PPP configuration 271  
    PPP component states 271  
    Monitoring the Ppp component 271  
    Monitoring the Link subcomponent 272  
    Monitoring the Lqm subcomponent 272  
    Monitoring the Leq subcomponent 273  
    Monitoring the MIFramer subcomponent 273  
Monitoring the IP and virtual router configuration 275  
    Monitoring the IP component 275  
    Monitoring the IpInterfaceEntry subcomponent 276  
    Monitoring the IP cache subcomponent 277  
    Monitoring the ICMP subcomponent 278  
    Testing connectivity using the ICMP subcomponent 278



Monitoring the TCP subcomponent	280
Monitoring the UDP subcomponent	281
Monitoring the IpPort component	281
Monitoring the Arp subcomponent	282
Monitoring the BootpPort component	283
Monitoring the RelayBroadCast subcomponent	283
Monitoring the IP routing management configuration	285
Monitoring the virtual media configuration	288
Monitoring the RIP configuration	290
Monitoring the OSPF configuration	292
Monitoring the BGP-4 configuration	295
Monitoring the BGP-4 MD5 Authentication	297
Monitoring the static route configuration	299
Monitoring the IP multicast configuration	301
Monitoring the virtual router redundancy protocol configuration	303
Displaying VRRP operational information	303
Locking and unlocking the VRRP component	303
Monitoring the IP CoS configuration	305
Using the ping command with IP CoS	305
Monitoring the IP CoS configuration	305
Monitoring IP DiffServ configuration	307
Confirming IP DiffServ interface profile usage	308
Confirming IP DiffServ interface profile configuration	310
Confirming connection class of connected media	312
Displaying per hop behaviors	313
Pinging ICMP with IP DiffServ	315
Monitoring the IP flow filters configuration	317
Monitoring the filter component	317
Monitoring the filterFlow subcomponent	317
Monitoring the IP tunnel configuration	319
Monitoring IP CPP on the VR	322
Determining if traffic is isolated	322
Restoring traffic for isolated DAs	322
<b>Troubleshooting</b>	<b>324</b>
Troubleshooting ATM MPE	325
Troubleshooting frame relay DTE	327
Troubleshooting PPP	328
Troubleshooting PPP/ATM interworking	332
<b>Procedure conventions</b>	<b>333</b>
Operational mode	333
Provisioning mode	334
Activating configuration changes	334



---

## What's new

---

The following features were added to this document:

- [Secure shell \(Ssh\) on Nortel Multiservice Switch 15000 and 20000 \(page 8\)](#)
- [Standard VPT for non-ATM SPVC \(page 8\)](#)

Other changes made to this document include the following:

- Updated [Configuring IP on a virtual router \(page 93\)](#) with information about modifying differentiated services code point (DCSP) marking.

---

**Attention:** To ensure that you are using the most current version of an NTP, check the current NTP list in NN10600-000 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 What's New*.

---

### Secure shell (Ssh) on Nortel Multiservice Switch 15000 and 20000

The following section was updated for this feature:

- [Monitoring the IP and virtual router configuration \(page 275\)](#)

### Standard VPT for non-ATM SPVC

The following sections were updated for this feature:

- [Configuring an ATM MPE soft PVC source to ATM MPE soft PVC destination connection \(page 22\)](#)
- [Configuring an ATM MPE soft PVC source to ATM UNI interface connection \(page 26\)](#)
- [Configuring an ATM UNI or virtual UNI interface soft PVC source to interface soft PVC source to ATM MPE soft PVC destination connection \(page 30\)](#)



---

# IP configuration

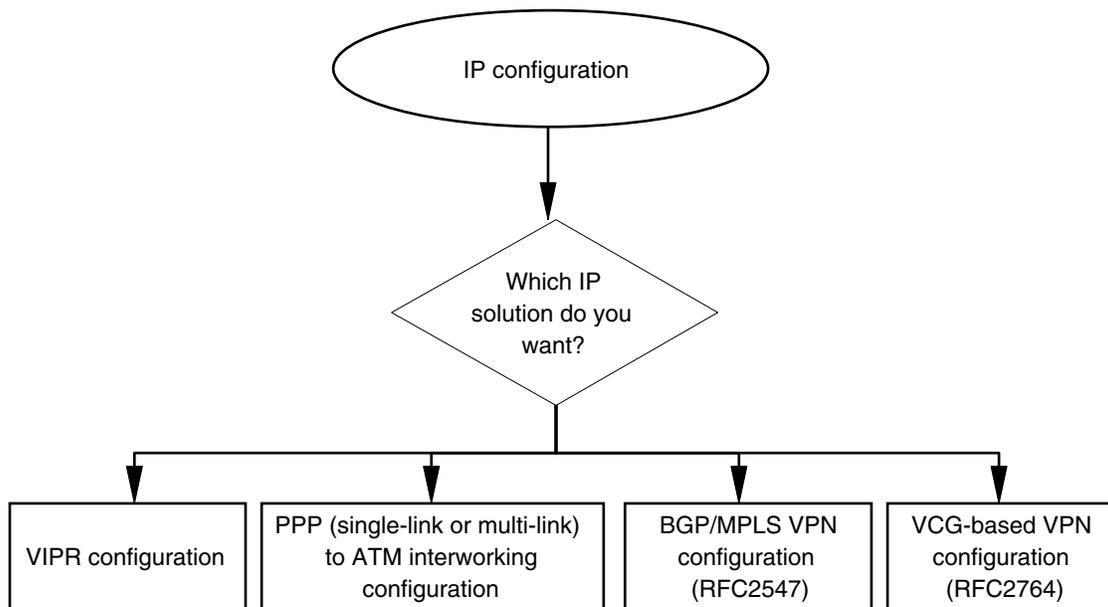
---

Configure Internet Protocol (IP) to enable Nortel Multiservice Switch nodes to provide IP virtual private network (VPN) capabilities across Multiservice Switch networks. Multiservice Switch nodes use virtual routers (VRs) and routers (RTRs) to provide IP connectivity between nodes.

## IP configuration tasks

This work flow shows you the sequence of tasks you perform to configure IP. To link to any task, go to [IP configuration task navigation \(page 10\)](#).

### IP configuration tasks



MSS 4001 044 AA



### IP configuration task navigation

- [VIPR configuration \(page 11\)](#)
- [PPP \(single-link or multi-link\) to ATM interworking configuration \(page 241\)](#)
- For information on configuring BGP/MPLS VPN, see NN10600-803 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP VPN Configuration Management*
- For information on configuring VCG-based VPN, see NN10600-803 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP VPN Configuration Management*



---

## VIPR configuration

---

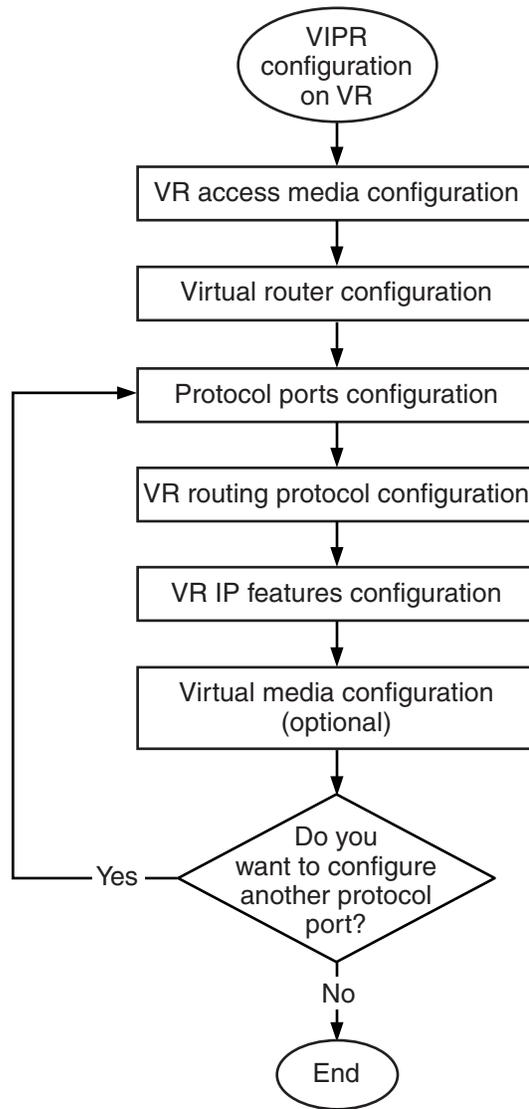
Configure the virtual IP router (VIPR) virtual router (VR) to provide a software emulation of physical routers. The two main functions of a VR are: constructing routing tables describing the paths to networks or subnetworks, and forwarding or switching packets to the final destination network or subnetwork.

### VIPR configuration on VR tasks

This work flow shows you the sequence of tasks you perform to configure the VR model. To link to any task, go to [VIPR configuration on VR task navigation \(page 12\)](#).



## VIPR configuration on VR tasks



PPT 3493 002 AA

### VIPR configuration on VR task navigation

- [VR access media configuration \(page 13\)](#)
- [Virtual router configuration \(page 89\)](#)
- [Protocol ports configuration \(page 95\)](#)
- [VR routing protocol configuration \(page 103\)](#)
- [VR IP features configuration \(page 200\)](#)
- [Virtual media configuration \(page 233\)](#)



---

# VR access media configuration

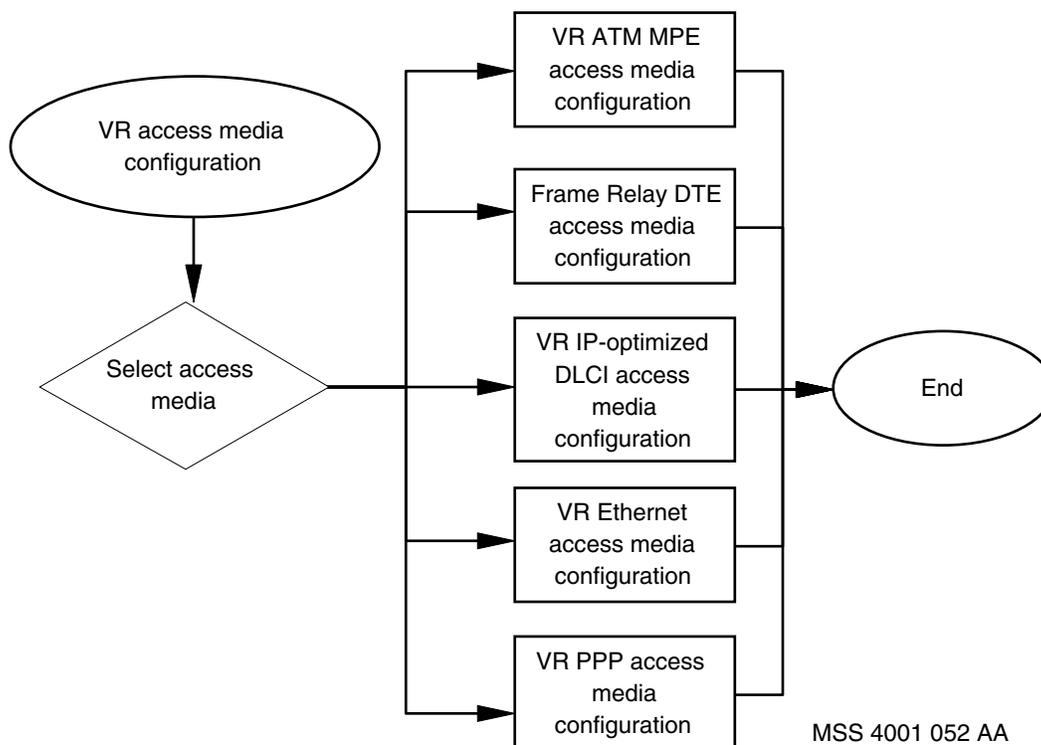
---

Configure VR access media to provide customer access to the network using IP media. For conceptual information about types of access media, see IP media in NN10600-800 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP Technology Fundamentals*.

## VR access media configuration tasks

This work flow shows you the sequence of tasks you perform to configure access media on the VR model. To link to any task, go to [VR access media configuration task navigation \(page 14\)](#).

### VR access media configuration tasks





### **VR access media configuration task navigation**

- [VR ATM MPE access media configuration \(page 15\)](#)
- [Frame relay DTE access media configuration \(page 34\)](#)
- [VR IP-optimized DLCI access media configuration \(page 53\)](#)
- [VR Ethernet access media configuration \(page 67\)](#)
- [VR PPP access media configuration \(page 72\)](#)



---

## VR ATM MPE access media configuration

---

Configure VR ATM multiprotocol encapsulation (MPE) access media to allow IP traffic to be transmitted across the ATM network using two types of ATM MPE media: permanent virtual circuits (PVCs) and soft PVCs (SPVCs).

### Prerequisites to VR ATM MPE access media configuration

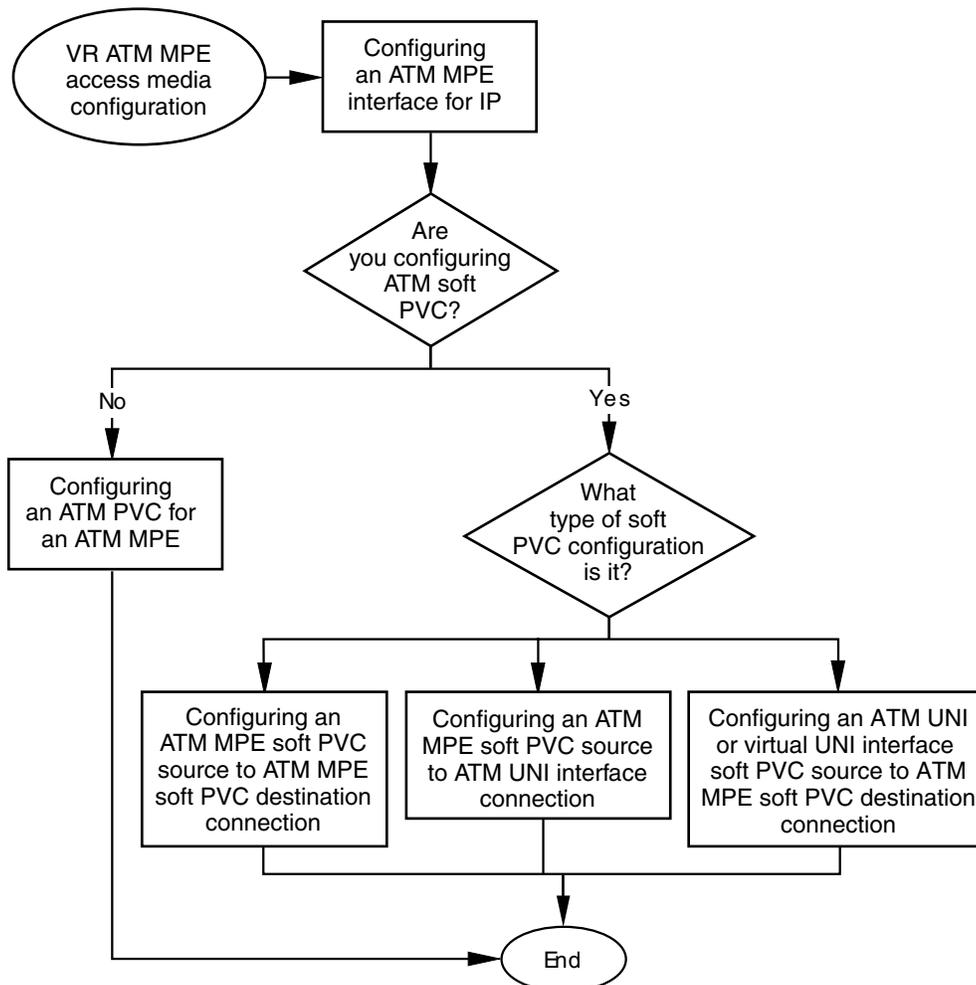
- Configure the required ATM interfaces and connections. See NN10600-710 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 ATM Configuration Management*.

### VR ATM MPE access media configuration procedures

This task flow shows you the sequence of procedures you perform to configure VR ATM MPE access media. To link to any procedure, go to [VR ATM MPE access media configuration procedures \(page 16\)](#).



**VR ATM MPE access media configuration procedures**



MSS 3533 003 AB

**VR ATM MPE access media configuration procedure navigation**

- [Configuring an ATM MPE interface for IP traffic \(page 17\)](#)
- [Configuring an ATM PVC for an ATM MPE interface \(page 19\)](#)
- [Configuring an ATM MPE soft PVC source to ATM MPE soft PVC destination connection \(page 22\)](#)
- [Configuring an ATM MPE soft PVC source to ATM UNI interface connection \(page 26\)](#)
- [Configuring an ATM UNI or virtual UNI interface soft PVC source to interface soft PVC source to ATM MPE soft PVC destination connection \(page 30\)](#)



---

## Configuring an ATM MPE interface for IP traffic

Configure an ATM multiprotocol encapsulation (MPE) interface for IP traffic to provide an ATM MPE connection between a Nortel Multiservice Switch node and the IP network.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Create an instance of the ATM MPE service.  <b>add AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt;</b>  When you create the <i>AtmMpe</i> component, the Multiservice Switch system automatically adds an instance of the <i>AtmConnection (Ac)</i> component, <i>Ac/1</i> , under the <i>AtmMpe</i> component.
2	Specify the maximum transmission unit (MTU) size to be used for ATM connections on this interface.  <b>set AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt; mtu &lt;size&gt;</b>
3	Specify the encapsulation type to be used for ATM connections on this interface.  <b>set AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt; encapType &lt;type&gt;</b>

---

--End--

---

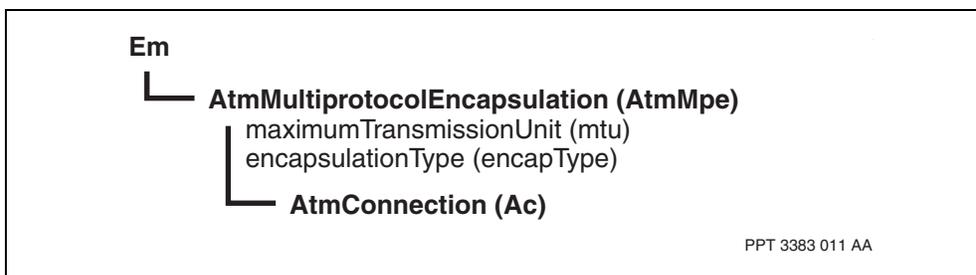


## Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<n>	is the instance number of the ATM MPE interface.
<size>	is the size of the largest datagram that can be sent on the interface.
<type>	is the encapsulation type defined for ATM connections on the interface. If you set the encapsulation type to <i>ipVcEncap</i> , you must configure a static ARP entry to ensure IP connectivity across the ATM network. For more information of static ARP, see <a href="#">Configuring VR static ARP (page 181)</a> . The <i>ipVcEncap</i> attribute value is supported only for ATM MPE PVCs, not for SPVCs.

## Procedure job aid

### ATM MPE interface for IP traffic component hierarchy





## Configuring an ATM PVC for an ATM MPE interface

Configure an ATM permanent virtual circuit (PVC) for an ATM multiprotocol encapsulation (MPE) interface to support full-mesh connectivity between VRs or virtual connection gateways (VCGs) using nailed-up connection points.

### Prerequisites

---

**Attention:** ATM MPE over PVCs is supported on CQC, GQM-based, and PQC-based FPs.

---

- Each *AtmMpe* component must have at least one *AtmConnection* component associated with a VCC that connects to every other Nortel Multiservice Switch node that uses the ATM MPE service.
- Each VCC (VPI.VCI) can be associated with the ATM interface or with a virtual path terminator (VPT). If the VCC is associated with a VPT, the VPI value is the instance of the *Vpt* component and the VCI value is the instance of the *Vcc* component. See NN10600-710 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 ATM Configuration Management*.
- If you are using VC-based multiplexing for IP traffic, you must configure a static ARP entry for the ATM VCC to ensure IP connectivity across the ATM network. Since VC-based multiplexing supports traffic for only one protocol type (in this case, IP), ARP packets cannot transmit on the ATM MPE service. See [Configuring VR static ARP \(page 181\)](#).

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	<p>Optionally, create an instance of an ATM connection for the ATM MPE service for the benefit of redundancy.</p> <pre>add AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt; Ac/&lt;conn&gt;</pre> <p>When you create the <i>AtmMpe</i> component, the Multiservice Switch system automatically adds an instance of the <i>AtmConnection</i> (<i>Ac</i>) component, <i>Ac/1</i>, under the <i>AtmMpe</i> component. Add the <i>Ac</i> component only when you need another connection after <i>Ac/1</i>.</p> <p>Do not change the attribute <i>AtmMpe Ac mplsSig</i> from its default value of <i>shared</i>. Setting this attribute to <i>dedicated</i> dedicates the connection to MPLS signalling.</p>
2	<p>Configure a VCC under an ATM interface, if one is not already available. This VCC is directly associated with the ATM MPE service and resides on the same node.</p> <pre>add AtmIf/&lt;i&gt; [Vpt/&lt;Vpi&gt;] Vcc/&lt;vc&gt;</pre>

---



- 3 Create a nailed-up endpoint (NEP) for the VCC, if one is not already available.  
**add AtmIf/<i> [Vpt/<Vpi>] Vcc/<vc> Nep**
- 4 Link the ATM MPE service to the ATM VCC.  
**set AtmMpe/<n> Ac/<conn> atmConnection AtmIf/<i> [Vpt/<Vpi>] Vcc/<vc> Nep**
- 5 If you are using an ILS forwarder FP, link the ATM MPE service to the ILS forwarder card.  
**set AtmMpe/<n> ilsForwarder Lp/<z> IlsFwdr/<f>**

---

--End--

---

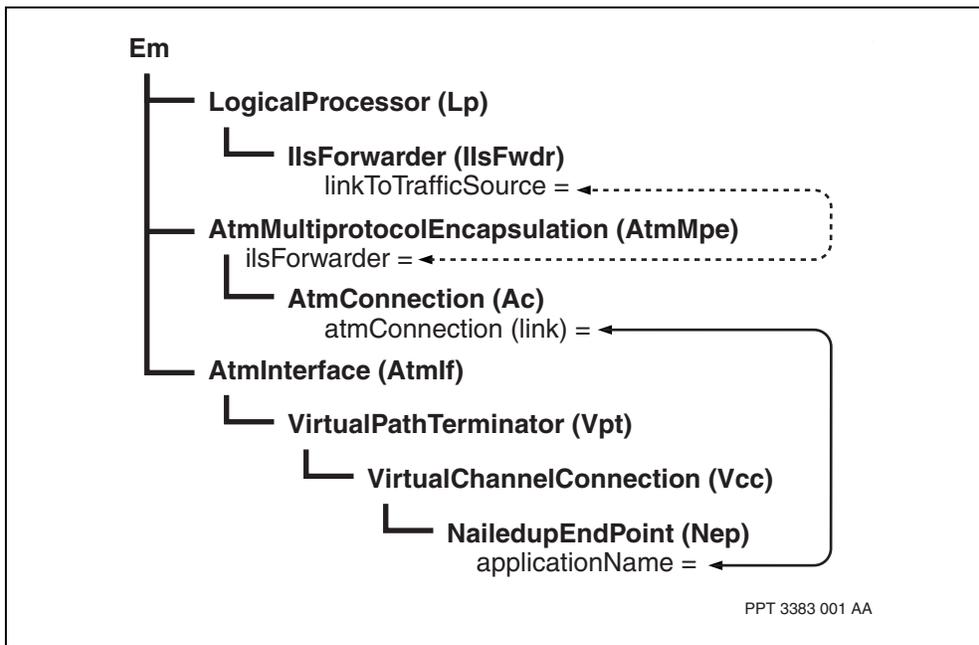


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<conn>	is the instance number of the ATM connection on the ATM MPE interface.
<f>	is the instance number of the ILS forwarder component under the logical interface.
<i>	is the instance number of the ATM interface.
<n>	is the instance number of the ATM MPE interface.
<vc>	is the instance value of the VCC. If the virtual channel is associated with a VPT, this value is the VCI value.
[Vpt/<Vpi>]	is the <i>VirtualPathTerminator (Vpt)</i> component instance.
<z>	is the instance number of the logical processor (LP) interface.

### Procedure job aid

#### ATM PVC for an ATM MPE interface component hierarchy





---

## Configuring an ATM MPE soft PVC source to ATM MPE soft PVC destination connection

Configure an ATM soft permanent virtual circuit (SPVC) for an ATM multiprotocol encapsulation (MPE) interface to support full-mesh connectivity between customer virtual routers (VRs) in a PNNI network, or virtual connection gateways (VCGs) across the backbone.

---

**Attention:** ATM MPE over SPVCs is supported on GQM-based and PQC-based FPs.

---

---

**Attention:** ATM MPE over SPVCs is not supported on CQC-based FPs.

---

### Prerequisites

- Configure the *Pnni* component under the *AtmRouting* and *AtmInterface* components. See NN10600-710 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 ATM Configuration Management*.
- When configuring ATM MPE SPVCs, the called/destination endpoint should be configured first. This allows the default NSAP address of the called/destination endpoint ATM MPE to be determined for the purpose of configuring the calling/source endpoint.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	<p>Optionally, create an instance of an ATM connection for the ATM MPE service for the benefit of redundancy.</p> <pre>add AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt; Ac/&lt;conn&gt;</pre> <p>When you create the <i>AtmMpe</i> component, the Multiservice Switch system automatically adds an instance of the <i>AtmConnection (Ac)</i> component (<i>Ac/1</i>) under the <i>AtmMpe</i> component. Add the <i>Ac</i> component only when you need another connection after <i>Ac/1</i>.</p> <p>Do not change the attribute <i>AtmMpe Ac mplsSig</i> from its default value of <i>shared</i>. Setting this attribute to <i>dedicated</i> dedicates the connection to MPLS signalling.</p>
2	<p>Create the SPVC termination point.</p> <pre>add AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt; Stp</pre>
3	<p>If this is the calling end of the SPVC, define the retry period.</p> <pre>set AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt; Stp retry &lt;period&gt;</pre>

---



- 4 Optionally, if this is the calling end of the SPVC, define the time value used to wait before an attempt is made to reestablish a connection after an established connection has been cleared/released.

```
set AtmMpe/<n> Stp sHoldOffTime <holdOffTime>
```

- 5 Optionally, define the local NSAP address if you are not using the default address.

```
set AtmMpe/<n> Stp laddr <nsap_addr>
```

- 6 Provision the endpoint as the calling or called endpoint of the SPVC.

```
add AtmMpe/<n> Ac/<conn> SrcPvc
```

or

```
add AtmMpe/<n> Ac/<conn> DstPvc
```

When you provision the endpoint as a source, or calling, endpoint, the Multiservice Switch system automatically adds a *TrafficManagement (Tm)* component under the *SrcPvc* component.

- 7 If this is the calling end of the SPVC, display the *opLocalAddress* attribute of the *AtmMpe Stp* component at the remote end to determine the NSAP address at the remote end of the connection.

```
d AtmMpe/<n> Ac/<conn> Stp opLocalAddress
```

- 8 If this is the calling end of the SPVC, set the remote address of the source to the NSAP address at the remote end of the connection. This address must match the provisioned or default NSAP address at the remote end.

```
set AtmMpe/<n> Ac/<conn> SrcPvc raddr <nsap_addr>
```

- 9 If this is the calling end of the SPVC, set the remote connection identifier. The *remoteConnectionIdentifier* is the instance of the *AtmMpe Ac* component at the remote end of the connection.

```
set AtmMpe/<n> Ac/<conn> SrcPvc rci <remote_conn>
```

- 10 If this is the calling end of the SPVC, define the ATM service category for the connection.

```
set AtmMpe/<n> Ac/<conn> SrcPvc Tm service <category>
```

- 11 If this is the calling end of the SPVC, define the peak cell rate (PCR) for both directions of the connection.

```
set AtmMpe/<n> Ac/<conn> SrcPvc Tm pcr <rate>
```

---

--End--

---



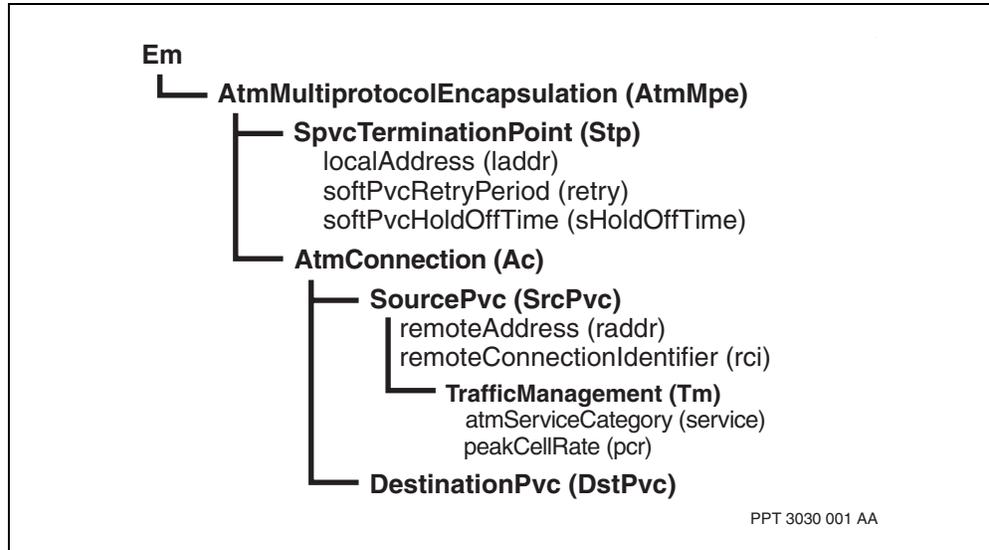
## Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<category>	is the service category of the calling end of the SPVC. When you define a service category for the SPVC, the BBC IE parameters are derived from the service category. For more information on ATM traffic management, see NN10600-705 <i>Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 ATM Traffic Management Fundamentals</i> .
<conn>	is the instance number of the ATM connection on the ATM MPE interface.
<holdOffTime>	The time, in milliseconds, to hold off before attempting to reestablish a connection after an established SPVC connection is cleared/released.
<n>	is the instance number of the ATM MPE interface.
<nsap_addr>	is a valid 40-digit NSAP address for the <i>AtmMpe</i> component. The default is an empty string. You should normally use the default NSAP address for each <i>AtmMpe</i> component instance. This practice ensures that any hierarchical routing in the PNNI network is maintained. If you do not enter an address, the system supplies a default. For more information on NSAP addressing, see NN10600-702 <i>Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 ATM Routing and Signalling Fundamentals</i> .
<period>	is the value that determines how long the calling end should wait after a failed setup attempt before making the next setup request. If you have several ATM MPE applications provisioned on a Multiservice Switch node, you should provision staggered <i>retry</i> timers. This practice ensures that the CP is not stressed by several ATM MPE applications simultaneously trying to reestablish their SPVCs after failure of a common interface.
<rate>	is the value of the peak cell rate. When you define a PCR for the SPVC, the PCR0+1 traffic descriptor IE parameter is configured. All other parameters are derived from the service category. For more information on ATM traffic management, see NN10600-705 <i>Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 ATM Traffic Management Fundamentals</i>
<remote_conn>	is an integer in the range 1 to 255. The default is 1.



## Procedure job aid

### ATM MPE soft PVC source to ATM MPE soft PVC destination connection component hierarchy





---

## Configuring an ATM MPE soft PVC source to ATM UNI interface connection

Configure an ATM multiprotocol encapsulation (MPE) interface soft PVC source to ATM UNI soft PVC destination connection over a PNNI network, in the case where only a segment of the end-to-end ATM connection is over a PNNI network, and the soft PVC segment of the ATM connection terminates on an ATM UNI interface.

---

**Attention:** ATM MPE over SPVCs is not supported on CQC-based FPs. In this case, it applies to the ATM MPE source endpoint.

---

---

**Attention:** ATM MPE over SPVCs is supported on GQM-based and PQC-based FPs.

---

### Prerequisites

- Configure the *Pnni* component under the *AtmRouting* and *AtmInterface* components, and the *Uni* component under the *AtmInterface* component. See NN10600-710 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 ATM Configuration Management*.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	<p>Optionally, create an instance of an ATM connection for the ATM MPE service on the source node.</p> <pre>add AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt; Ac/&lt;conn&gt;</pre> <p>When you create the <i>AtmMpe</i> component, the Multiservice Switch system automatically adds an instance of the <i>AtmConnection (Ac)</i> component, <i>Ac/1</i>, under the <i>AtmMpe</i> component.</p> <p>Do not change the attribute <i>AtmMpe Ac mplsSig</i> from its default value of <i>shared</i>. Setting this attribute to <i>dedicated</i> dedicates the connection to MPLS signalling.</p>
2	<p>Create the SPVC termination point on the source node.</p> <pre>add AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt; Stp</pre>
3	<p>Define the retry period on the source node.</p> <pre>set AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt; Stp retry &lt;period&gt;</pre>
4	<p>Optionally, on the source node, define the time value used to wait before an attempt is made to reestablish a connection after an established connection has been cleared/released.</p>



- set AtmMpe/<n> Stp sHoldOffTime <holdOffTime>**
- 5 Provision the endpoint as the calling endpoint of the SPVC on the source node.
- add AtmMpe/<n> Ac/<conn> SrcPvc**
- When you provision the endpoint as a source, or calling, endpoint, the Multiservice Switch system automatically adds a *TrafficManagement* (Tm) component under the *SrcPvc* component.
- 6 Perform the following on the destination node where the remote *AtmIf* exists to determine the NSAP address at the remote end of the connection.
- display -o AtmIf/<i> Uni Addr/\*,default**
- 7 On the source node, set the remote address of the source to the NSAP address of the remote end of the connection. This is the address of the ATM UNI interface (*AtmIf Uni*) where the VCC connection terminates.
- set AtmMpe/<n> Ac/<conn> SrcPvc raddr <nsap\_addr>**
- 8 Set the remote connection identification on the source node. The *remoteCi* is the VCI (Virtual Channel Identifier) of the remote UNI *AtmIf Vcc*. The VPI (Virtual Path Identifier) is always 0 in this case. If an *AtmIf Vcc Dst* component is provisioned, this represents the VCI value of that *Vcc*. If no *AtmIf Vcc Dst* component is provisioned, the *AtmIf Vcc Dst* component is dynamically created, and the VCI value of the *Vcc* is the *remoteCi* value.
- set AtmMpe/<n> Ac/<conn> SrcPvc rci <remote\_vci>**
- 9 Define the ATM service category for the connection on the source node.
- set AtmMpe/<n> Ac/<conn> SrcPvc Tm service <category>**
- 10 Define the peak cell rate (PCR) for both directions of the connection on the source node.
- set AtmMpe/<n> Ac/<conn> SrcPvc Tm pcr <rate>**
- 11 Optionally, add a VCC destination point at the remote end of the connection on the UNI *AtmIf* on the destination node.
- add AtmIf/<i> Vcc/0.<remote\_vci> Dst**
- The *AtmIf Vcc Vcd Tm* component on destination node should be configured to match the *AtmMpe Ac SrcPvc Tm* component parameters on the source node. For more information, see NN10600-710 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 ATM Configuration Management*.

---

--End--

---



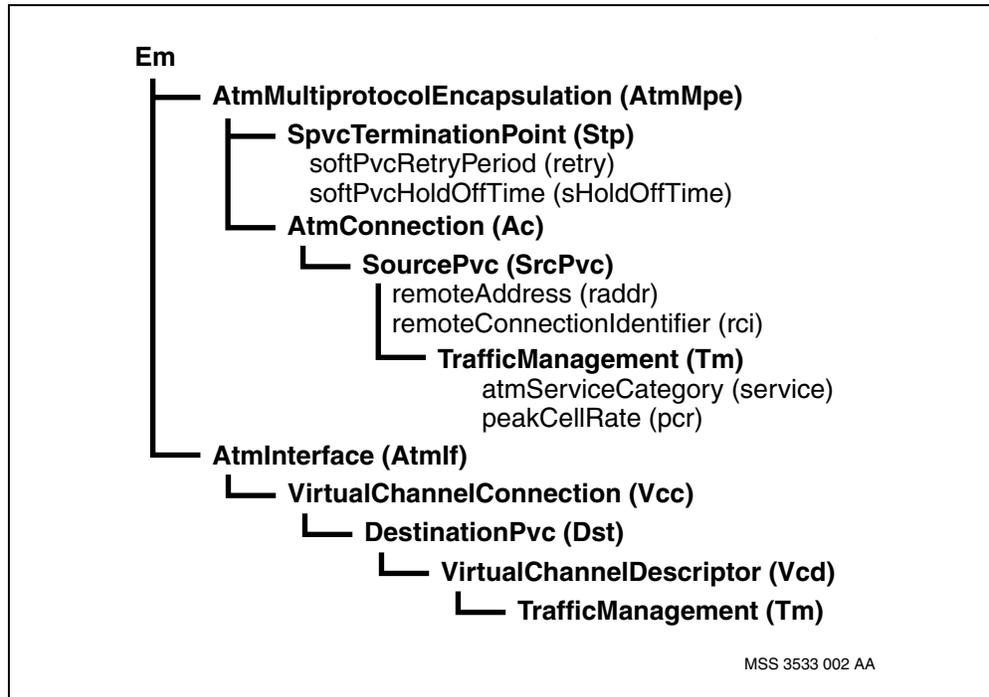
## Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<category>	is the service category of the calling end of the SPVC. When you define a service category for the SPVC, the BBC IE parameters are derived from the service category. For more information on ATM traffic management, see NN10600-705 <i>Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 ATM Traffic Management Fundamentals</i> .
<conn>	is the instance number of the ATM connection on the ATM MPE interface.
<holdOffTime>	is the time, in milliseconds, to hold off before attempting to reestablish a connection after an established SPVC connection is cleared/released.
<i>	is the instance number of the remote ATM interface where the ATM connection is to be terminated.
<n>	is the instance number of the ATM MPE interface.
<nsap_addr>	is a valid 40-digit NSAP address for the destination ATM UNI interface.
<period>	is the value that determines how long the calling end should wait after a failed setup attempt before making the next setup request. If you have several ATM MPE applications provisioned on a Multiservice Switch node, you should provision staggered <i>retry</i> timers. This practice ensures that the CP is not stressed by several ATM MPE applications simultaneously trying to reestablish their SPVCs after failure of a common interface.
<rate>	is the value of the peak cell rate. When you define a PCR for the SPVC, the PCR0+1 traffic descriptor IE parameter is configured. All other parameters are derived from the service category. For more information on ATM traffic management, see NN10600-705 <i>Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 ATM Traffic Management Fundamentals</i>
<remote_vci>	the remote VCC VCI instance value in the range of 32 to 255.



## Procedure job aid

### ATM MPE soft PVC source to ATM UNI interface connection





---

## Configuring an ATM UNI or virtual UNI interface soft PVC source to interface soft PVC source to ATM MPE soft PVC destination connection

Configure an ATM UNI or virtual UNI SPVC source to ATM multiprotocol encapsulation (MPE) interface SPVC destination connection over a PNNI network, in the case where only a segment of the end-to-end ATM connection is over a PNNI network, and the SPVC segment of the ATM connection originates from an ATM UNI interface.

---

**Attention:** ATM MPE over SPVCs is not supported on CQC-based FPs. In this case, it applies to the ATM MPE destination endpoint.

---

---

**Attention:** ATM MPE over SPVCs is supported on GQM-based and PQC-based FPs.

---

### Prerequisites

- Configure the *Pnni* component under the *AtmRouting* and *AtmInterface* components, and the *Uni* component under the *AtmInterface* component. See NN10600-710 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 ATM Configuration Management*.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	<p>Optionally, create an instance of an ATM connection for the ATM MPE service on the destination node.</p> <pre>add AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt; Ac/&lt;conn&gt;</pre> <p>When you create the <i>AtmMpe</i> component, the Multiservice Switch system automatically adds an instance of the <i>AtmConnection (Ac)</i> component, <i>Ac/1</i>, under the <i>AtmMpe</i> component.</p> <p>Do not change the attribute <i>AtmMpe Ac mplsSig</i> from its default value of <i>shared</i>. Setting this attribute to <i>dedicated</i> dedicates the connection to MPLS signalling.</p>
2	<p>Create the SPVC termination point on the destination node.</p> <pre>add AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt; Stp</pre>
3	<p>Optionally, on the destination node, define the local NSAP address if you are not using the default address.</p> <pre>set AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt; Stp laddr &lt;nsap_addr&gt;</pre>

---



- 4 Provision the endpoint as the called endpoint of the SPVC on the destination node.  
**add AtmMpe/<n> Ac/<conn> DstPvc**
- 5 Activate the changes on the destination node.
- 6 Add a VCC soft PVC source connection endpoint on the source node.  
**add AtmIf/<i> [Vpt/<Vpi>] Vcc/<vc> Src**
- 7 Obtain the NSAP address of the destination *AtmMpe*.  
**display AtmMpe/<n> Ac/<conn> Stp opLocalAddress**
- 8 On the source node, set the called address of the *Src* component to the NSAP address of the *AtmMpe* destination point.  
**set AtmIf/<i> [Vpt/<Vpi>] Vcc/<vc> Src calledAddress <nsap\_addr>**
- 9 On the source node, configure the component to connect to the remote *AtmMpe Ac* instance.  
**set AtmIf/<i> [Vpt/<Vpi>] Vcc/<vc> Src calledVpiVci 0.<conn>**  
  
The *calledVpiVci* attribute is used to do this. The VPI instance is always 0 and the VCI value represents the *Ac* instance of the *AtmMpe Ac* being connected to.
- 10 Optionally, on the source node, configure the VCC source traffic management parameters (*AtmIf Vcc Vcd Tm* or *AtmIf Vpt Vcc Vcd Tm*) and other *AtmIf Vcc Src* or *AtmIf Vpt Vcc Src* component attributes. For more information, see NN10600-710 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 ATM Configuration Management*.

--End--

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<conn>	is the instance number of the ATM connection on the ATM MPE interface.
<i>	is the instance number of the ATM interface at the source end.
<n>	is the instance number of the ATM MPE interface.
(1 of 2)	

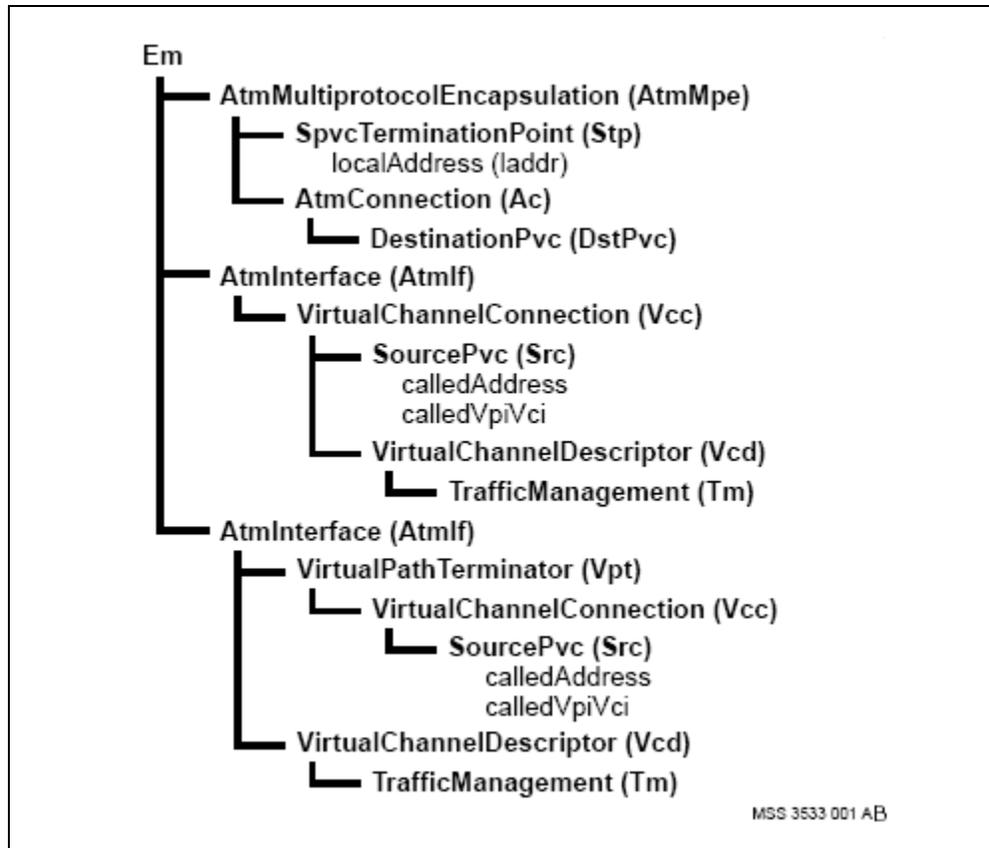


Variable	Value
<nsap_addr>	is a valid 40-digit NSAP address for the <i>AtmMpe</i> component. The default is an empty string. You should normally use the default NSAP address for each <i>AtmMpe</i> component instance. This practice ensures that any hierarchical routing in the PNNI network is maintained. If you do not enter an address, the system supplies a default. For more information on NSAP addressing, see NN10600-702 <i>Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 ATM Routing and Signalling Fundamentals</i> .
<vc>	is the instance value of the VCC. If the virtual channel is associated with a VPT, this value is the VCI value.
[Vpt/<Vpi>]	is the <i>VirtualPathTerminator (Vpt)</i> component instance.
(2 of 2)	



**Procedure job aid**

**ATM UNI interface or virtual UNI interface soft PVC source to ATM MPE soft PVC destination connection**



MSS 3533 001 AB



---

## Frame relay DTE access media configuration

---

Configure frame relay data terminating device (DTE) to enable Nortel Multiservice Switch nodes to carry IP over frame relay media.

### Prerequisites to frame relay DTE access media configuration

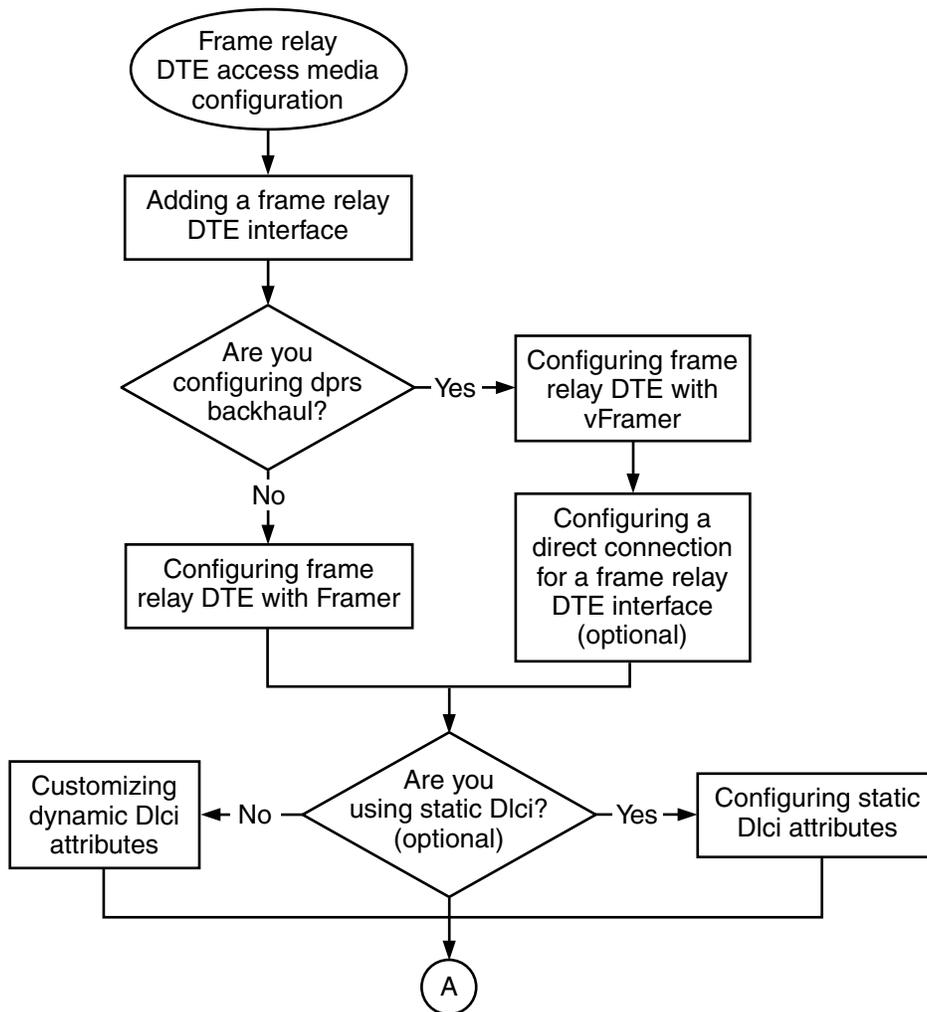
- Configure the required frame relay interfaces and connections. See NN10600-901 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Frame Relay Configuration Management*.

### Frame relay DTE access media configuration procedures

This task flow shows you the sequence of procedures you perform to configure frame relay DTE. To link to any procedure, go to [Frame relay DTE access media configuration procedure navigation \(page 36\)](#).



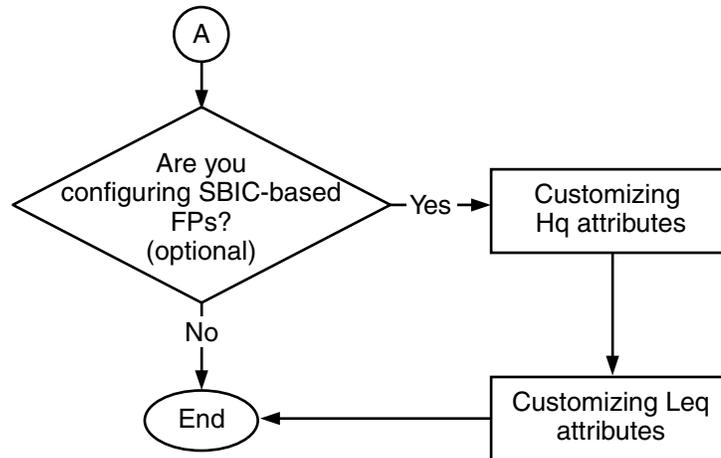
**Frame relay DTE access media configuration procedures**



PPT 3497 024 AA



**Frame relay DTE access media configuration procedures (continued)**



PPT 3497 024 AB

**Frame relay DTE access media configuration procedure navigation**

- [Adding a frame relay DTE interface \(page 37\)](#)
- [Configuring frame relay DTE with Frammer \(page 38\)](#)
- [Configuring frame relay DTE with vFramer \(page 40\)](#)
- [Configuring a direct connection for a frame relay DTE interface \(page 43\)](#)
- [Customizing static Dlci attributes \(page 45\)](#)
- [Customizing dynamic Dlci attributes \(page 47\)](#)
- [Customizing Hq attributes \(page 49\)](#)
- [Customizing Leq attributes \(page 51\)](#)



## Adding a frame relay DTE interface

Configure a frame relay data terminating device (DTE) interface to provide a frame relay connection between a Nortel Multiservice Switch node and the IP network.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add an FrDte link level protocol interface application. The attributes associated with this new interface have default values assigned automatically. One remote group (Rg/1) is created automatically when the <i>FrDte</i> component is added.  <code>add FrDte/&lt;a&gt;</code>

---

--End--

---

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<a>	is the number of the FrDte instance.



## Configuring frame relay DTE with Framer

Configure a frame relay data terminating device (DTE) with Framer connection between a frame relay DTE interface and a frame relay UNI interface as an alternative to a logical or direct connection.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add a logical processor (Lp). <code>add Lp/&lt;e&gt;</code>
2	Add a v.35 port to the logical processor. <code>add Lp/&lt;e&gt; V35/&lt;f&gt;</code>
3	Link the FrDte application to the hardware component. <code>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; Framer interfaceName Lp/&lt;e&gt; V35/&lt;f&gt;</code>
4	Add a static DLCI component. <code>add FrDte/&lt;a&gt; StDlci/&lt;d&gt;</code>
5	Link the DLCI to a remote group. <code>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; StDlci/&lt;d&gt; linkToRemoteGroup FrDte/&lt;a&gt; Rg/&lt;g&gt;</code>

---

--End--

---

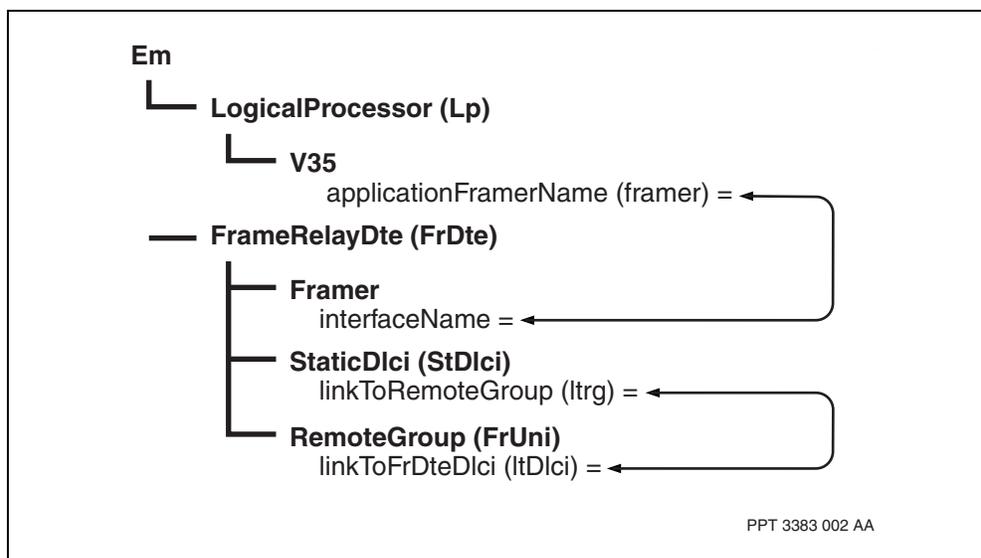


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<a>	is the number of the FrDte instance.
<d>	is the number of the static DLCI instance.
<e>	is the number of the Lp instance.
<f>	is the number of the V35 instance.
<g>	is the number of the remote group instance.

### Procedure job aid

#### Frame relay DTE with Framer component hierarchy





## Configuring frame relay DTE with vFramer

Configure frame relay data terminating device (DTE) with vFramer to establish a logical connection between a frame relay DTE interface and a frame relay UNI interface as an alternative to a physical or direct connection. Not using a physical connection frees a port on the card.

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Delete the framer component. <b>delete FrDte/&lt;a&gt; Framer</b>
2	Add a virtual framer component to the FrDte. <b>add FrDte/&lt;a&gt; VFramer</b>
3	Delete the framer component to FrUni/b. <b>delete FrUni/&lt;b&gt; Framer</b>
4	Add a virtual framer subcomponent to FrUni/b. <b>add FrUni/&lt;b&gt; VFramer</b>
5	Link the FrDte virtual framer. <b>set FrUni/&lt;b&gt; VFramer otherVirtualFramer FrDte/&lt;a&gt; VFramer</b>
6	Link the FrUni virtual framer. <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; VFramer otherVirtualFramer FrUni/&lt;b&gt; VFramer</b>
	If the virtual framer is configured on the 4-port DS3Ch or 1-port STM-1Ch FPs, the pair of virtual framers must be on the same LP.
7	Link the FrDte application to the Lp. <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; VFramer lp Lp/&lt;e&gt;</b>
8	Add a static Dci. <b>add FrDte/&lt;a&gt; StaticDlci/&lt;d&gt;</b>
9	Link the static Dci to a remote group. <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; StaticDlci/&lt;d&gt; linkToRemoteGroup FrDte/&lt;a&gt; Rg/&lt;g&gt;</b>
10	Add DLCI and DirectCall subcomponents to both FrUni components. <b>add FrUni/&lt;b&gt; Dlci/&lt;d&gt;</b> <b>add FrUni/&lt;c&gt; Dlci/&lt;d&gt;</b>

When you add a *Dlci* component, Nortel Multiservice Switch system automatically creates a *DirectCall (Dc)* subcomponent.



- 11 Set the *type* attribute of FrUni/<b> Dlci/<d> Dc.  
**set FrUni/<b> Dlci/<d> Dc type master**
- 12 Set the *remoteDna* attribute of FrUni/<b> Dlci/<d> Dc.  
**set FrUni/<b> Dlci/<d> Dc rdna <dna of Fruni/<c>**
- 13 Set the *remoteDlci* attribute of FrUni/<b> Dlci/<d> Dc.  
**set FrUni/<b> Dlci/<d> Dc rdldci <d>**
- 14 Set the *type* attribute of FrUni/<c> Dlci/<d> Dc.  
**set FrUni/<c> Dlci/<d> Dc type slave**
- 15 Set the *remoteDna* attribute of FrUni/<c> Dlci/<d> Dc.  
**set FrUni/<c> Dlci/<d> Dc rdna <dna of Fruni/<b>>**
- 16 Set the *remoteDlci* attribute of FrUni/<c> Dlci/<d> Dc.  
**set FrUni/<c> Dlci/<d> Dc rdldci <d>**

---

--End--

---

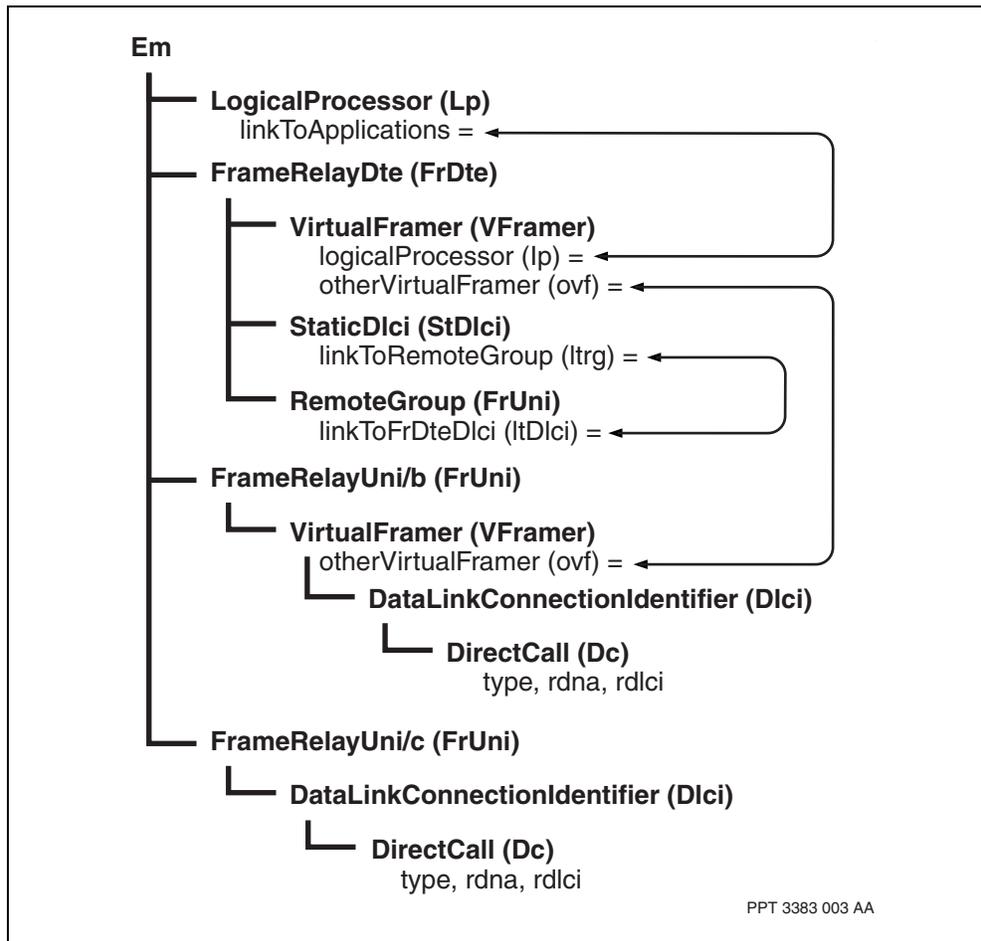


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<a>	is the number of the FrDte instance.
<b>	is the number of the FrUni instance.
<c>	is the number of the FrUni instance.
<d>	is the number of the StaticDlci instance.
<e>	is the number of the Lp instance.
<g>	is the number of the remote group instance.

### Procedure job aid

#### Frame relay DTE with vFramer component hierarchy





---

## Configuring a direct connection for a frame relay DTE interface

Configure a direct connection between a frame relay data terminating device (DTE) interface and a frame relay UNI interface as an alternative to a physical or logical connection.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Set the <i>LocalManagementInterface (LMI)</i> components on the FrDte and the FrUni to which it interfaces so that no LMI procedures are running.  <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; Lmi procedures none</b> <b>set FrUni/&lt;b&gt; Lmi procedures none</b>
2	Turn accounting data collection off for the DLCI of the FrUni that interfaces with the FrDte.  <b>set FrUni/&lt;b&gt; Dlci/&lt;d&gt; Sp accounting off</b>
3	Add a direct connection component to the FrDte.  <b>add FrDte/&lt;a&gt; Dconn</b>
4	Add a direct connection component to the customer-facing FrUni.  <b>add FrUni/&lt;c&gt; Dconn</b>
5	Link the direct connection between the FrDte and the customer-facing FrUni.  <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; Dconn directFrUniConnection FrUni/&lt;c&gt; Dconn</b>

---

--End--

---

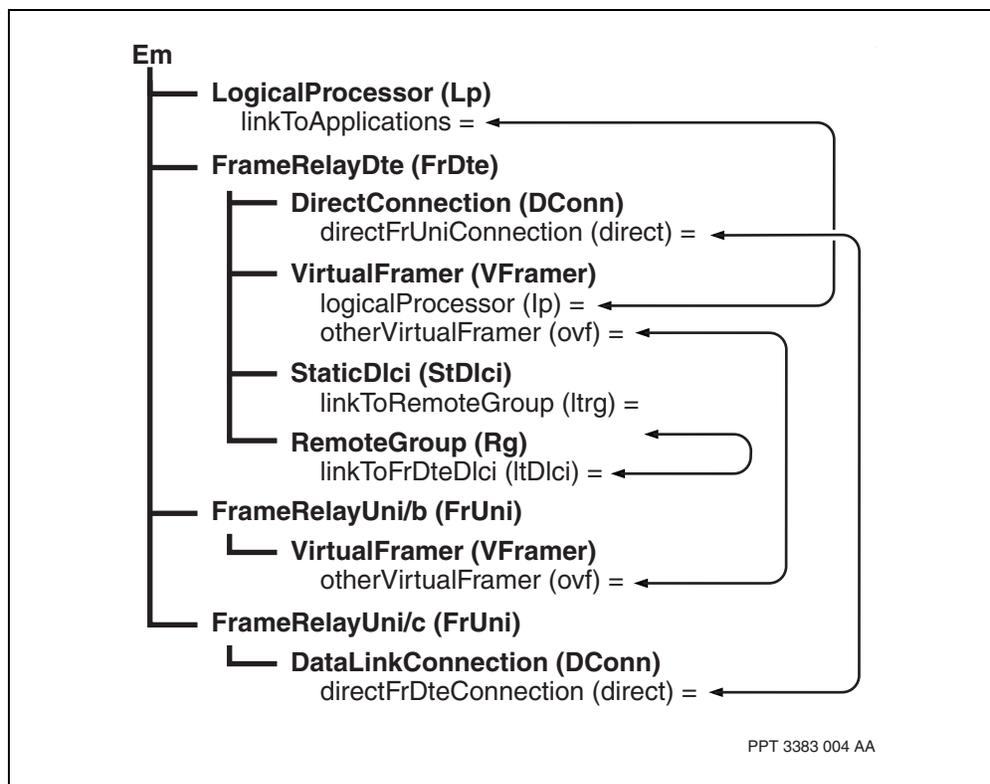


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<a>	is the number of the FrDte instance.
<b>	is the number of the FrUni instance.
<c>	is the number of the FrUni instance.
<d>	is the number of the Dlci.

### Procedure job aid

#### Direct connection for a frame relay DTE interface component hierarchy





## Customizing static Dci attributes

Customize the static provisionable data link connection identifier (*Dci*) attributes to control the traffic characteristics on the link, such as size of traffic, information rate setting, dropped bandwidth and size of burst.

Dual-leaky (CIR and EIR) buckets are used to perform egress rate enforcement. The attribute *committedInformationRate* specifies the drain rate of the CIR bucket. And the attributes *committedBurst* and *excessBurst* specify the capacity of the CIR and EIR bucket respectively.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Set the rate enforcement policy. <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; StDlci/&lt;b&gt; rateEnforcement &lt;enforcement&gt;</b>
2	Define the average number of bits to be transferred per second over the <i>Dci</i> component to the <i>Dce</i> component. <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; StDlci/&lt;b&gt; committedInformationRate &lt;rate&gt;</b>
3	Define the committed burst size (in bits) to which the <i>Dci</i> component wants to subscribe. <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; StDlci/&lt;b&gt; committedBurst &lt;burst&gt;</b>
4	Define the excess bursts (in bits) to which the <i>Dci</i> component wants to subscribe. <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; StDlci/&lt;b&gt; excessBurst &lt;excess&gt;</b>
5	Specify the action taken when <i>committedBurst</i> size has been exceeded on the <i>Dci</i> component but the <i>excessBurst</i> size has not. <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; StDlci/&lt;b&gt; excessBurstAction &lt;action&gt;</b>

---

--End--

---

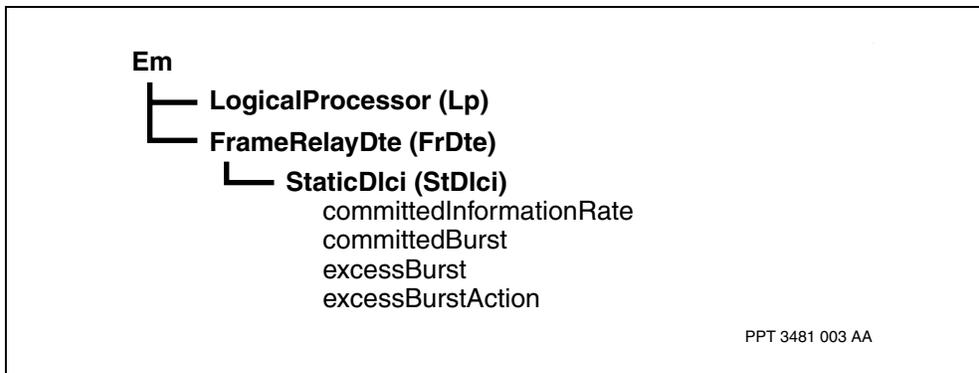


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<a>	is the number of the FrDte instance.
<action>	is the action you take when <i>committedBurst</i> size has been exceeded on the <i>Dlci</i> component but the <i>excessBurst</i> size has not.
<b>	is the number of the static DLCI instance.
<burst>	is the value of the committed burst size, in bits, to which the <i>Dlci</i> component wants to subscribe.
<enforcement>	is the rate enforcement policy.
<rate>	is the average number of bits to be transferred per second over the <i>Dlci</i> to the <i>Dce</i> .

### Procedure job aid

#### Static Dlci attributes component hierarchy





---

## Customizing dynamic DlcI attributes

Customize the dynamic provisionable attributes of the *FrDte* data link connection identifier (*DlcI*) subcomponent to provide additional capabilities.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Define the average number of bits to be transferred per second over the <i>DlcI</i> to the <i>Dce</i> .  <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; DynDlcIDef committedInformationRate &lt;rate&gt;</b>
2	Set the rate enforcement policy on the <i>DlcI</i> component.  <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; DynDlcIDef rateEnforcement &lt;enforcement&gt;</b>
3	Define the committed burst size to which the <i>DlcI</i> component wants to subscribe.  <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; DynDlcIDef committedBurst &lt;burst&gt;</b>
4	Define the excess bursts (in bits) to which the <i>DlcI</i> component wants to subscribe.  <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; DynDlcIDef excessBurst &lt;excess&gt;</b>
5	Specify the action taken when <i>committedBurst</i> size has been exceeded on the <i>DlcI</i> component but the <i>excessBurst</i> size has not.  <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; DynDlcIDef excessBurstAction &lt;action&gt;</b>

---

--End--

---

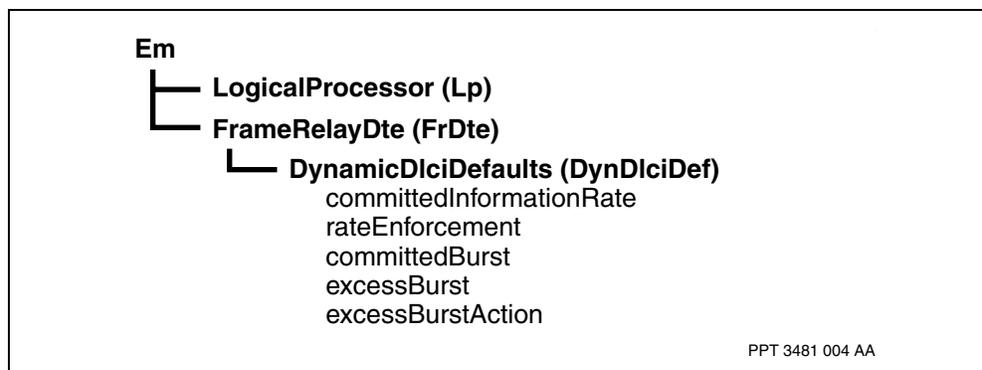


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<a>	is the number of the FrDte instance.
<action>	is the action you take when <i>committedBurst</i> size has been exceeded on the <i>Dlci</i> component but the <i>excessBurst</i> size has not.
<burst>	is the value of the committed burst size, in bits, to which the <i>Dlci</i> component wants to subscribe.
<d>	is the number of the Dlci.
<enforcement>	is the rate enforcement policy.
<rate>	is the average number of bits to be transferred per second over the <i>Dlci</i> to the <i>Dce</i> .

### Procedure job aid

#### Dynamic Dlci attributes component hierarchy





## Customizing Hq attributes

Customize the hibernation queue (*Hq*) subcomponent under the *StDlci* component to provide the same type of service as the *Leq* component, except that the service is performed on a per DLCI basis. It is supported on SBIC-based FPs only. See [Customizing Leq attributes \(page 51\)](#) for more information.

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Add the <i>Hq</i> subcomponent under the <i>StaticDlci</i> component. <b>add FrDte/&lt;a&gt; StDlci/&lt;b&gt; Hq</b>
2	Define the maximum number of packets allowed in the link emission queue ( <i>Leq</i> ). <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; StDlci/&lt;b&gt; Hq maxPackets &lt;maxPackets&gt;</b>
3	Define the maximum amount of data allowed in the queue at any given time. <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; StDlci/&lt;b&gt; Hq maxMsecData &lt;maxMsecPackets&gt;</b>
4	Restrict the percentage of multicast packets allowed in the queue. <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; StDlci/&lt;b&gt; Hq maxPercentMulticast &lt;maxPercentMulticast&gt;</b>
5	Ensure old packets on the queue are discarded if they are not transmitted. <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; StDlci/&lt;b&gt; Hq timeToLive &lt;timeToLive&gt;</b>

--End--

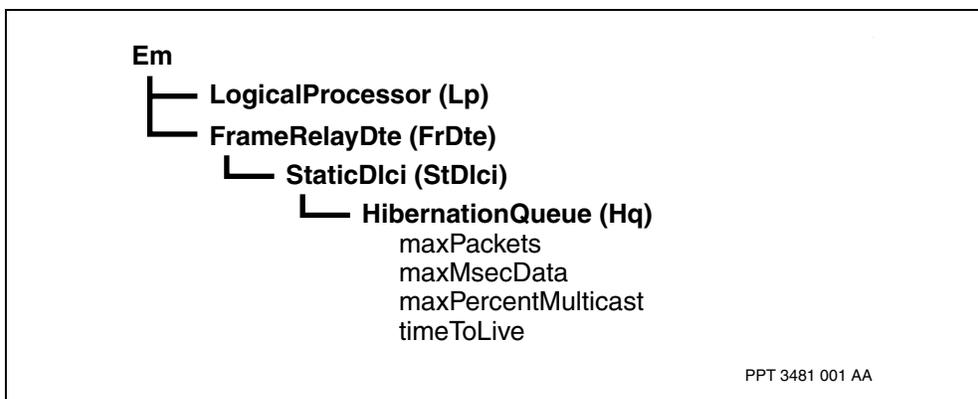


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<a>	is the number of the FrDte instance.
<b>	is the number of the static DLCI instance.
<maxMsecPackets>	is the maximum amount of data, in milliseconds, allowed in the queue at any given time.
<maxPackets>	is the maximum number of packets allowed in the link emission queue ( <i>Leq</i> ).
<maxPercentMulticast>	is the percentage of multicast packets allowed in the queue.
<timeToLive>	is the time, in milliseconds, for packets to live in the queue before they are discarded, if not transmitted.

### Procedure job aid

#### Hq attributes component hierarchy





## Customizing Leq attributes

Add a link emission queue (*Leq*) subcomponent to the *FrDte* component to provide more elasticity (packet queuing) in the transmit data path, especially for slow frame relay data rates that tend to be overdriven by higher speed LANs. *Leq* also allows prioritization of traffic for certain applications, guaranteeing bandwidth for a particular traffic flow. The *Leq* subcomponent is supported only on Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400 nodes with SBIC-based FPs.

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Add the <i>Leq</i> subcomponent under <i>FrDte</i> component. <b>add FrDte/&lt;a&gt; Leq</b>
2	Define the maximum number of packets allowed in the link emission queue ( <i>Leq</i> ). <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; Leq maxPackets &lt;maxPackets&gt;</b>
3	Define the maximum amount of data allowed in the queue at any given time. <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; Leq maxMsecData &lt;maxMsecPackets&gt;</b>
4	Restrict the percentage of multicast packets allowed in the queue. <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; Leq maxPercentMulticast &lt;maxPercentMulticast&gt;</b>
5	Ensure old packets on the queue are discarded if they are not transmitted. <b>set FrDte/&lt;a&gt; Leq timeToLive &lt;timeToLive&gt;</b>

--End--

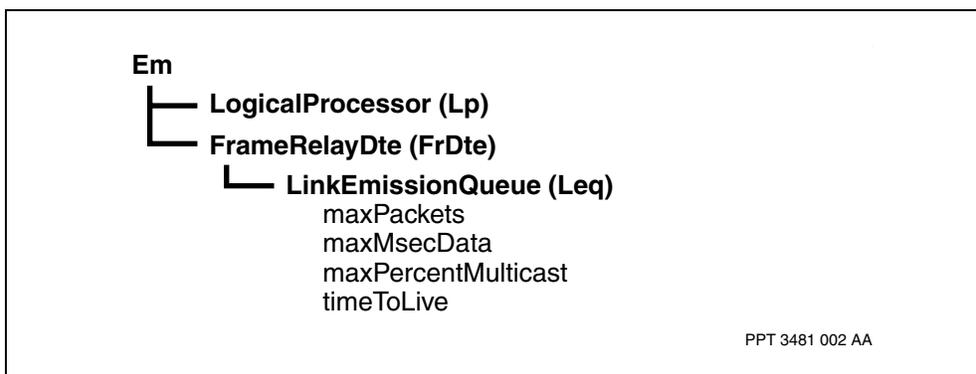


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<a>	is the number of the FrDte instance.
<maxMsecPackets>	is the maximum amount of data, in milliseconds, allowed in the queue at any given time.
<maxPackets>	is the maximum number of packets allowed in the link emission queue ( <i>Leq</i> ).
<maxPercentMulticast>	is the percentage of multicast packets allowed in the queue.
<timeToLive>	is the time, in milliseconds, for packets to live in the queue before they are discarded, if not transmitted.

### Procedure job aid

#### Leq attributes component hierarchy





---

## VR IP-optimized DLCI access media configuration

---

Configure a VR IP-optimized data link connection identifier (DLCI) to enable Nortel Multiservice Switch nodes to carry IP over frame relay using IP-optimized DLCI, which binds directly to a virtual protocol port.

### Prerequisites to VR IP-optimized DLCI access media configuration

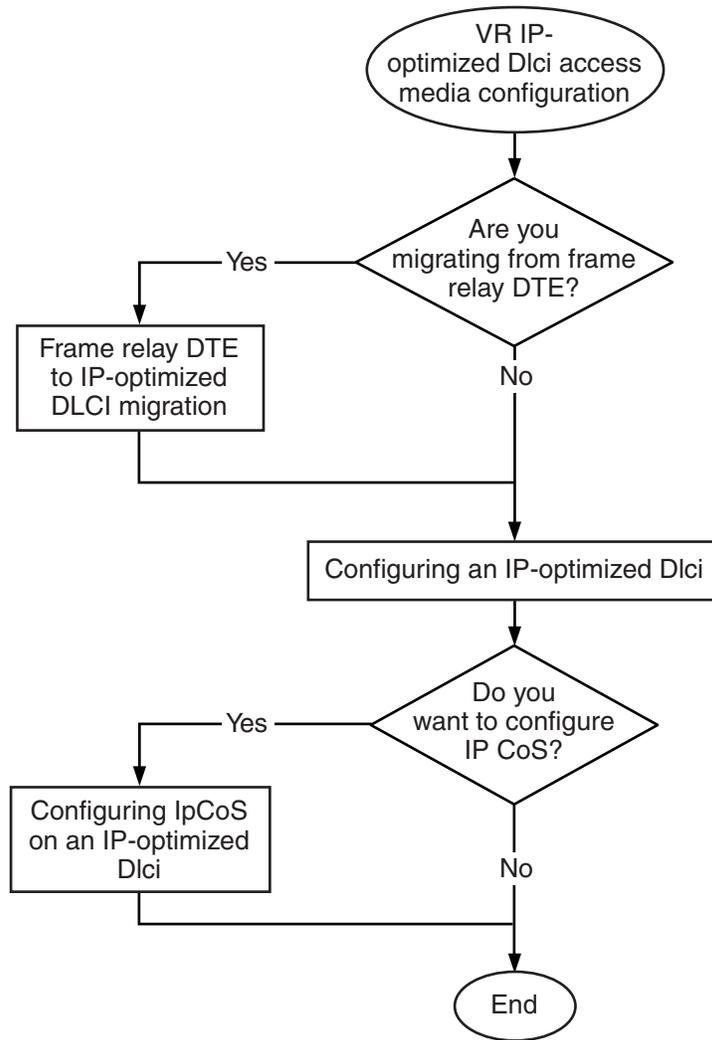
- Configure the required frame relay interfaces. See NN10600-901 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Frame Relay Configuration Management*.
- See NN10600-551 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 FP Configuration Reference* for information on which FPs support this service.
- Use the procedures in NN10600-270 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Software Installation* to load any required features.

### VR IP-optimized DLCI access media configuration procedures

This task flow shows you the sequence of procedures you perform to configure VR IP-optimized DLCI. To link to any procedure, go to [VR IP-optimized DLCI access media configuration procedure navigation \(page 54\)](#).



**VR IP-optimized DLCI access media configuration procedures**



PPT 3493 003 AA

**VR IP-optimized DLCI access media configuration procedure navigation**

- [Frame relay DTE to IP-optimized DLCI migration \(page 58\)](#)
- [Configuring an IP-optimized DLCI \(page 55\)](#)
- [Configuring IpCos on an IP-optimized DLCI \(page 57\)](#)



## Configuring an IP-optimized DLCI

Configure an IP-optimized DLCI to create a direct frame relay access to a Nortel Multiservice Switch network.

### Prerequisites

- When you are using an IP-optimized DLCI at the edge of the network, verify that the attribute *FrUni Lmi side* is set to *network*. For more information on the *Lmi* component, see NN10600-900 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Frame Relay Technology Fundamentals*.

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Add the IpDlciGroup. <b>add IpDlciGroup/&lt;n&gt;</b> The subcomponent <i>IpDlciGroup Frc/1</i> is automatically created.
2	Add the DLCI and IP connection to the FrUni. <b>add FrUni/&lt;o&gt; Dlci/&lt;p&gt;</b> When you add a <i>Dlci</i> component, a <i>Dc</i> subcomponent is automatically created. The <i>Dc</i> and <i>IpConnection</i> subcomponents are mutually exclusive.
3	Delete the <i>Dc</i> subcomponent. <b>del FrUni/&lt;o&gt; Dlci/&lt;p&gt; Dc</b>
4	Add the IP connection to the FrUni. <b>add FrUni/&lt;o&gt; Dlci/&lt;p&gt; IpConnection</b>
5	Link the DLCI to its FrConnection. <b>set FrUni/&lt;o&gt; Dlci/&lt;p&gt; IpConnection linkToIpDlciGrp IpDlciGroup/&lt;n&gt; Frc/&lt;q&gt;</b>

--End--

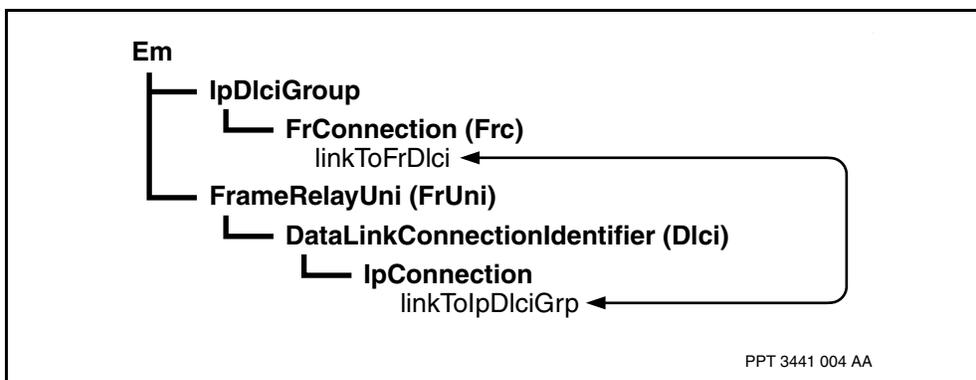


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<n>	is the instance value of the interface between the virtual router protocol port and the IP-optimized DLCI.
<o>	is the instance value of the FrUni.
<p>	is the instance value of the DLCI.
<q>	is the instance value of the frame relay connection.

### Procedure job aid

#### IP-optimized DLCI component hierarchy





## Configuring IpCos on an IP-optimized DLCI

Configure IpCos on an IP-optimized DLCI to control delay variation when voice is carried across the same interface as data.

### Procedure steps

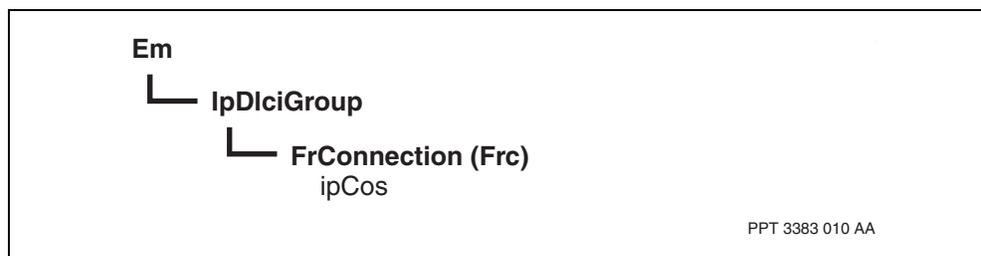
Step	Action
1	Set the CoS index, which is used as the value for the emission priority (EP). <code>set IpDlciGroup/&lt;n&gt; Frc/&lt;q&gt; ipCos &lt;cos&gt;</code>
--End--	

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<cos>	is the CoS value associated with the DLCI.
<n>	is the instance value of the interface between the virtual router protocol port and the IP-optimized DLCI.
<q>	is the instance value of the frame relay connection.

### Procedure job aid

#### IpCos on an IP-optimized DLCI component hierarchy





---

# Frame relay DTE to IP-optimized DLCI migration

---

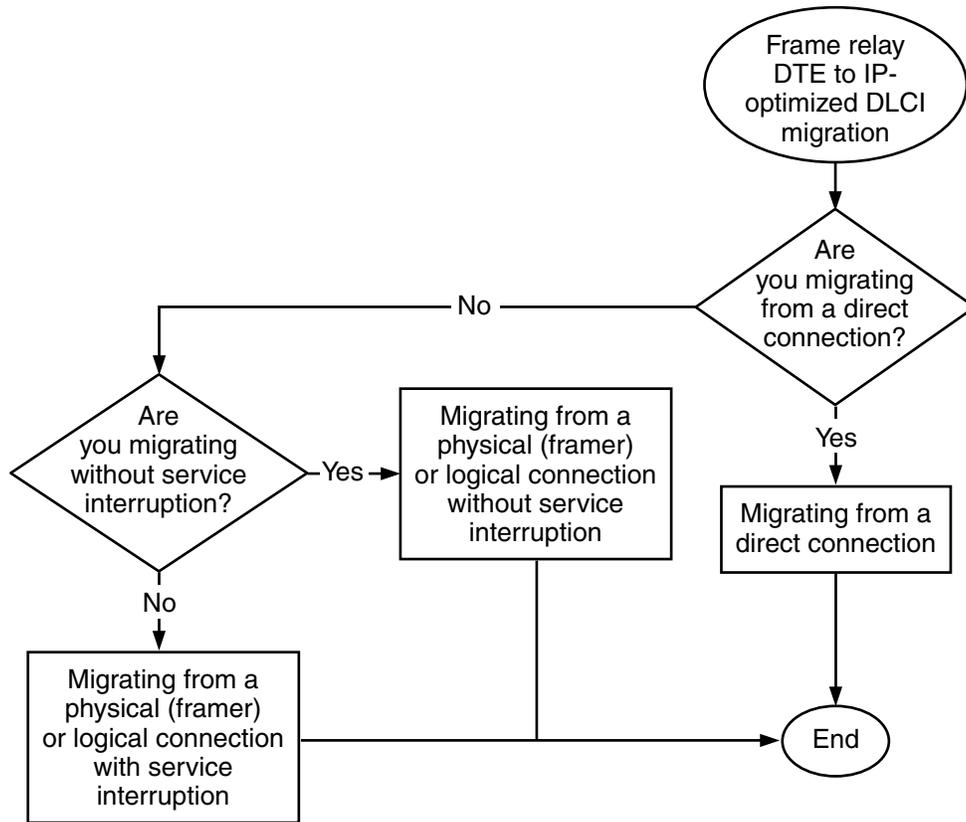
Migrate from FrDte-based to IP-optimized DLCI IP over frame relay to increase traffic throughput and simplify provisioning for IP over frame relay.

## Frame relay DTE to IP-optimized DLCI migration tasks

This task flow shows you the sequence of procedures you perform to migrate frame relay DTE to IP-optimized DLCI. To link to any procedure, go to [Frame relay DTE to IP-optimized DLCI migration procedure navigation \(page 59\)](#).



**Frame relay DTE to IP-optimized DLCI migration procedures**



PPT 3493 023 AA

**Frame relay DTE to IP-optimized DLCI migration procedure navigation**

- [Migrating from a physical \(Framer\) or logical connection with service interruption \(page 60\)](#)
- [Migrating from a physical \(Framer\) or logical connection without service interruption \(page 62\)](#)
- [Migrating from a direct connection \(page 65\)](#)



---

## Migrating from a physical (Framer) or logical connection with service interruption

Migrate from a physical (Framer) or logical connection with service interruption to increase traffic throughput and simplify provisioning for IP over frame relay by converting the existing DLCI to an IP-optimized DLCI.

### Prerequisites

- See [Configuring frame relay DTE with Framer \(page 38\)](#) or [Configuring frame relay DTE with vFramer \(page 40\)](#) for information on the existing connection.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Remove the components that are no longer required. <pre>del FrUni/&lt;c&gt; Dlci/&lt;d&gt; Dc del FrUni/&lt;b&gt; del FrDte/&lt;a&gt;</pre>
2	Add the IP DLCI group. <pre>add IpDlciGroup/&lt;e&gt;</pre>
3	Link the IP DLCI group to the protocol port that was linked to the FrDTE. <pre>set IpDlciGroup/&lt;e&gt; linkToProtocolPort Vr/&lt;f&gt; Pp/&lt;g&gt;</pre>
4	Add the IP connection. <pre>add FrUni/&lt;c&gt; Dlci/&lt;d&gt; IpConnection</pre>
5	Link the DLCI to its FrConnection. <pre>set FrUni/&lt;c&gt; Dlci/&lt;d&gt; IpConnection linkToIpDlciGrp IpDlciGroup/&lt;e&gt; Frc/&lt;h&gt;</pre>

---

--End--

---

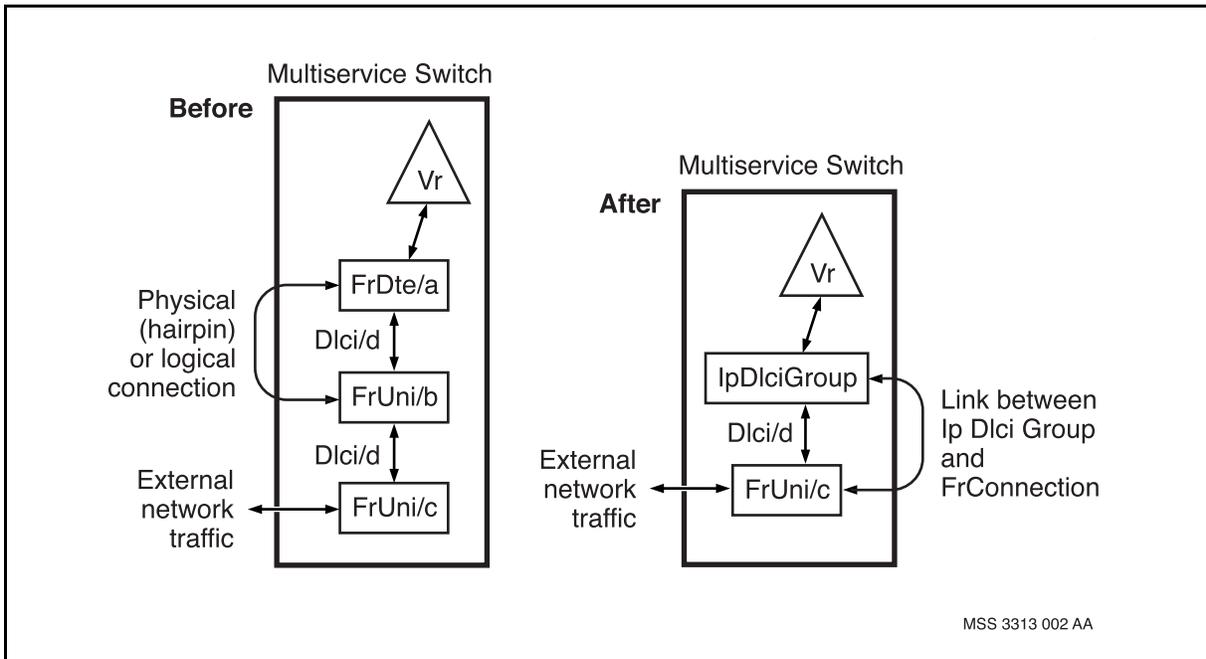


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<a>	is the instance value of the FrDTE.
<b>	is the instance value of the FrUni between the FrDTE and the customer-facing FrUni.
<c>	is the instance value of the customer-facing FrUni.
<d>	is the instance value of the DLCI.
<e>	is the instance value of the interface between the virtual router protocol port and the IP-optimized DLCI.
<f>	is the name of the virtual router.
<g>	is the name of the protocol port.
<h>	is the instance value of the frame relay connection.

### Procedure job aid

#### Migration from a physical (Framer) or logical connection with service interruption





---

## Migrating from a physical (Framer) or logical connection without service interruption

Migrate from a physical (Framer) or logical connection without service interruption to increase traffic throughput and simplify provisioning for IP over frame relay.

### Prerequisites

- See [Configuring frame relay DTE with Framer \(page 38\)](#) or [Configuring frame relay DTE with vFramer \(page 40\)](#) for information on the existing connection.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add the IP DLCI group. <code>add IpDlciGroup/&lt;e&gt;</code>
2	Add the DLCI to the FrUni. <code>add FrUni/&lt;c&gt; Dlci/&lt;new&gt;</code> <code>del FrUni/&lt;c&gt; Dlci/&lt;new&gt; Dc</code>
3	Add the IP connection to the FrUni. <code>add FrUni/&lt;c&gt; Dlci/&lt;new&gt; IpConnection</code>
4	Link the DLCI to its FrConnection. <code>set FrUni/&lt;c&gt; Dlci/&lt;new&gt; IpConnection linkToIpDlciGrp IpDlciGroup/&lt;e&gt; Frc/&lt;h&gt;</code>
5	Link the IP DLCI group to the protocol port. <code>set IpDlciGroup/&lt;e&gt; linkToProtocolPort Vr/&lt;f&gt; Pp/&lt;g&gt;</code>
6	Ensure that you have set up a logical interface and network mask. See <a href="#">Enabling IpPort on a protocol port (page 99)</a> .
7	Lock the original DLCI to force traffic on to the IP-optimized DLCI. <code>lock FrUni/&lt;c&gt; Dlci/&lt;old&gt;</code>
8	When you are sure the IP-optimized DLCI is working properly, remove the components that are no longer required. <code>del FrUni/&lt;c&gt; Dlci/&lt;old&gt;</code> <code>del FrUni/&lt;b&gt;</code> <code>del FrDte/&lt;a&gt;</code> <code>del Vr/&lt;f&gt; Pp/&lt;i&gt;</code>

---

--End--

---



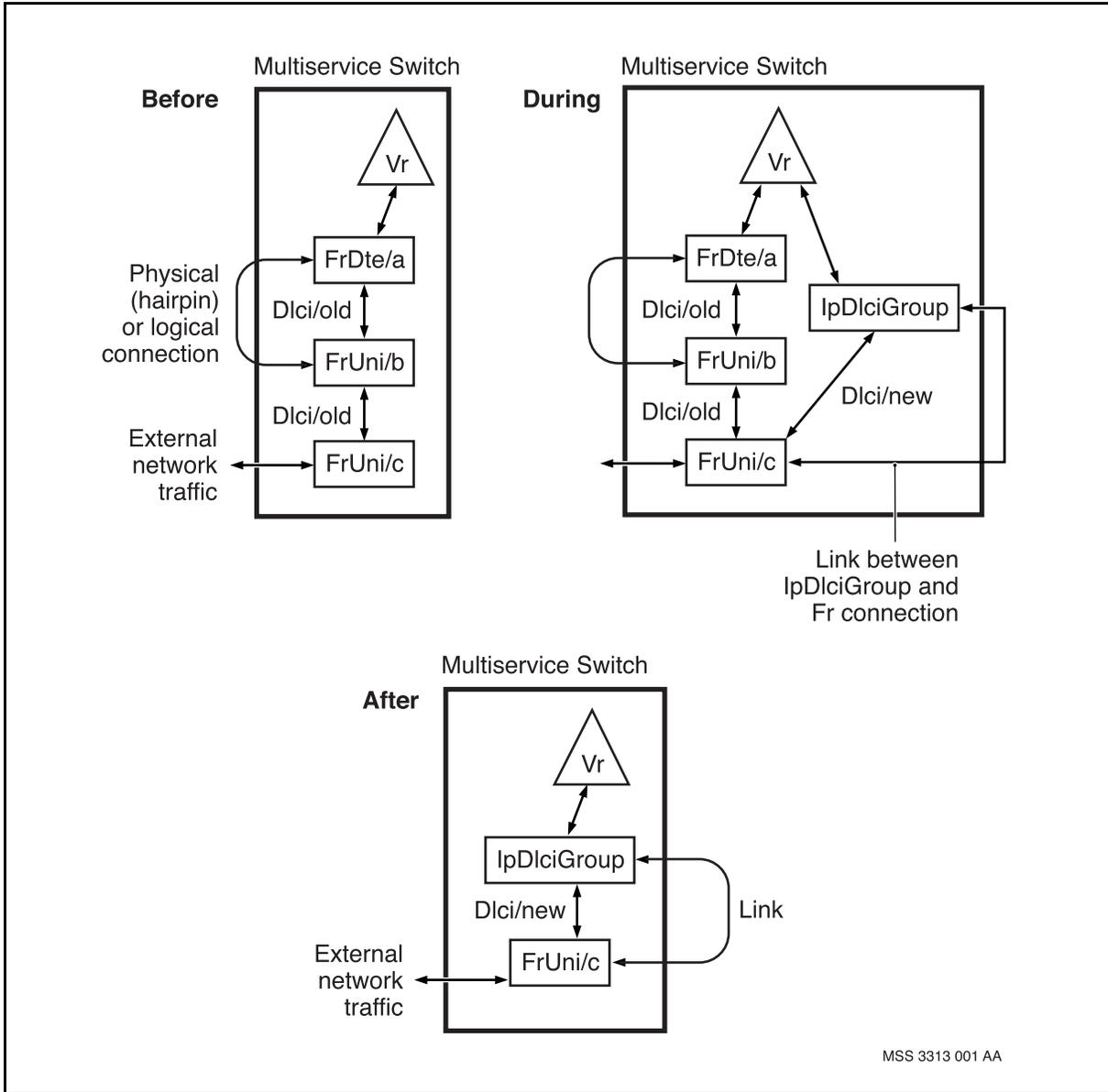
### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<a>	is the instance value of the FrDTE.
<b>	is the instance value of the FrUni between the FrDTE and the customer-facing FrUni.
<c>	is the instance value of the customer-facing FrUni.
<e>	is the instance value of the interface between the virtual router protocol port and the IP-optimized DLCI.
<f>	is the name of the virtual router.
<g>	is the name of the protocol port for the IP-optimized DLCI.
<h>	is the instance value of the frame relay connection.
<i>	is the name of the protocol port for the frame relay DTE.
<new>	is the instance value of the IP-optimized DLCI.
<old>	is the instance value of the old DLCI.



### Procedure job aid

#### Migration from a physical (Framer) or logical connection without service interruption





## Migrating from a direct connection

Migrate from a direct connection to increase traffic throughput and simplify provisioning for IP over frame relay by converting the existing DLCI to an IP-optimized DLCI.

### Prerequisites

- See [Configuring frame relay DTE with Framer \(page 38\)](#) for information on the existing connection.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Remove the components that are no longer required. <pre>del FrUni/&lt;c&gt; Dconn del FrUni/&lt;c&gt; Dlci/&lt;d&gt; Dc del FrUni/&lt;b&gt; del FrDte/&lt;a&gt;</pre>
2	Add the IP DLCI group. <pre>add IpDlciGroup/&lt;e&gt;</pre>
3	Link the IP DLCI group to the protocol port that was linked to the FrDTE. <pre>set IpDlciGroup/&lt;e&gt; linkToProtocolPort Vr/&lt;f&gt; Pp/&lt;g&gt;</pre>
4	Add the IP connection. <pre>add FrUni/&lt;c&gt; Dlci/&lt;d&gt; IpConnection</pre>
5	Link the DLCI to its FrConnection. <pre>set FrUni/&lt;c&gt; Dlci/&lt;d&gt; IpConnection linkToIpDlciGrp IpDlciGroup/&lt;e&gt; Frc/&lt;h&gt;</pre>

---

--End--

---

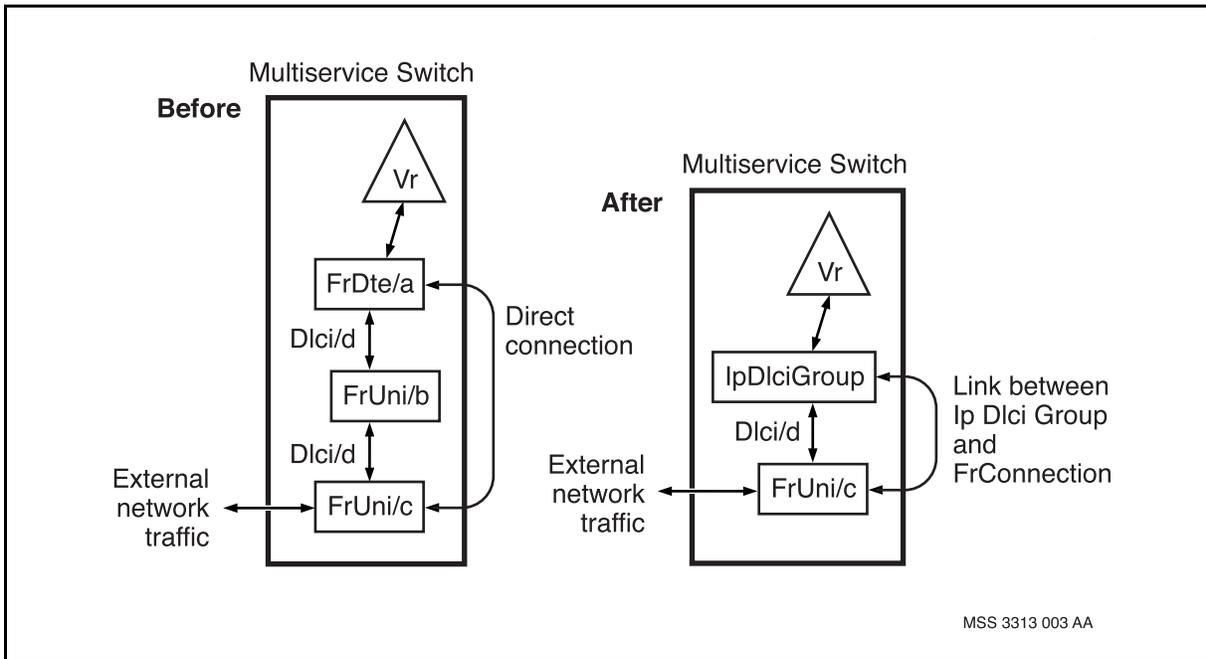


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<a>	is the instance value of the FrDTE.
<b>	is the instance value of the FrUni between the FrDTE and the customer-facing FrUni.
<c>	is the instance value of the customer-facing FrUni.
<d>	is the instance value of the DLCI.
<e>	is the instance value of the interface between the virtual router protocol port and the IP-optimized DLCI.
<f>	is the name of the virtual router.
<g>	is the name of the protocol port.
<h>	is the instance value of the frame relay connection.

### Procedure job aid

#### Migration from a direct connection





---

# VR Ethernet access media configuration

---

Configure VR Ethernet access media to provide an Ethernet connection between a Nortel Multiservice Switch node and the IP network.

## Prerequisites to VR Ethernet access media configuration

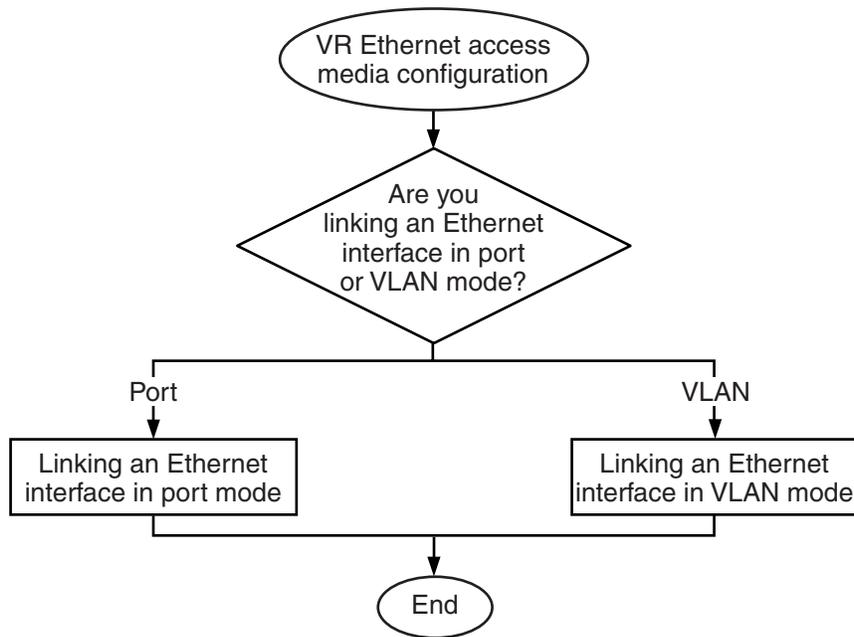
- You need to load feature *atmMpe* and *atmMpeSpvc* on the feature list of the 4-port 10/100BaseT Ethernet function processor (FP), 4-port gigabit Ethernet FP, or 8-port 10/100BaseT Ethernet FP in order to forward traffic to ATM MPE media.
- See NN10600-550 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Common Configuration Procedures* for procedures on how to load any required features.
- See NN10600-551 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 FP Configuration Reference* for information on which FPs support this service.
- See NN10600-800 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP Technology Fundamentals* for supporting information, such as application and feature names for IP on Nortel Multiservice Switch nodes.

## VR Ethernet access media configuration procedures

This task flow shows you the sequence of procedures to perform in order to configure Ethernet as an access media for IP in a VIPR configuration. To link to any procedure, go to [VR Ethernet access media procedure navigation \(page 68\)](#).



**VR Ethernet access media configuration procedures**



MSS 3543 003 AA

**VR Ethernet access media procedure navigation**

- [Linking an Ethernet interface in port mode \(page 69\)](#)
- [Linking an Ethernet interface in VLAN mode \(page 70\)](#)



## Linking an Ethernet interface in port mode

Link an Ethernet interface in port mode to setup port access to an IP service.

### Prerequisites

- You must ensure that the Ethernet interface is in port mode. For more information, see NN10600-821 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Operations: Ethernet Services*.

### Procedure steps

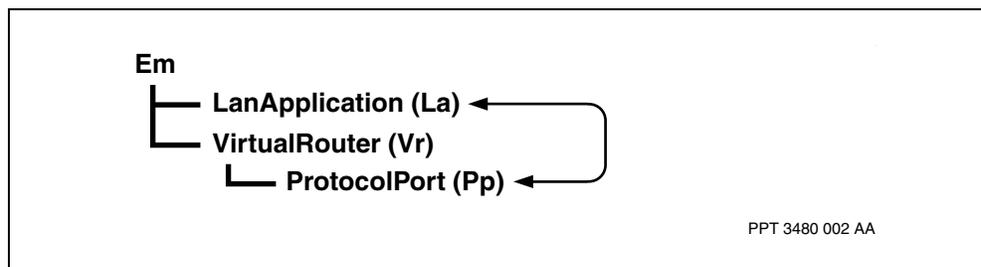
Step	Action
1	Link the <i>LanApplication</i> component to the <i>ProtocolPort</i> component.  <pre>set La/&lt;x&gt; linkToProtocolPort Vr/&lt;vr_value&gt; Pp/ &lt;Pp_value&gt;</pre>
--End--	

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<Pp_value>	is the name of the protocol port.
<vr_value>	is the name of the Vr.
<x>	is the number of the <i>LanApplication</i> instance.

### Procedure job aid

#### Ethernet interface in port mode component hierarchy





## Linking an Ethernet interface in VLAN mode

Link an Ethernet interface in VLAN mode to provide Ethernet VLAN access to the VIPR solution.

---

**Attention:** Ethernet interfaces in VLAN mode are supported on the 4-port 10/100 BaseT Ethernet, 8-port 10/100 BaseT Ethernet, and 4-port gigabit Ethernet function processors (FPs) only.

---

### Prerequisites

- You must ensure that the Ethernet interface is in VLAN mode. For more information, see NN10600-821 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Operations: Ethernet Services*.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Link the <i>Vlan</i> component to the <i>LanApplication</i> component.  <code>set La/&lt;x&gt; vlan/&lt;y&gt; linkToProtocolPort Vr/&lt;vr_value&gt; Pp/&lt;Pp_value&gt;</code>

---

--End--

---

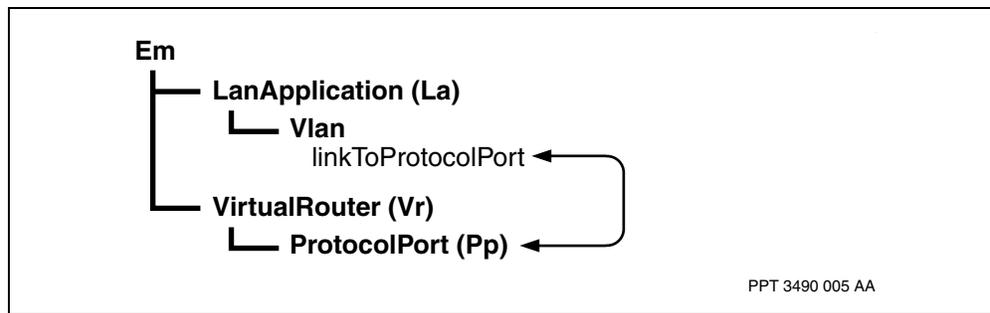


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<Pp_value>	is the name of the protocol port.
<vr_value>	is the name of the VR.
<x>	is the number of the LanApplication instance.
<y>	is the number of the vlan instance.

### Procedure job aid

#### Ethernet interface to the VIPR service component hierarchy





---

## VR PPP access media configuration

---

Configure VR point-to-point protocol (PPP) access media to enable Nortel Multiservice Switch nodes to carry IP over PPP.

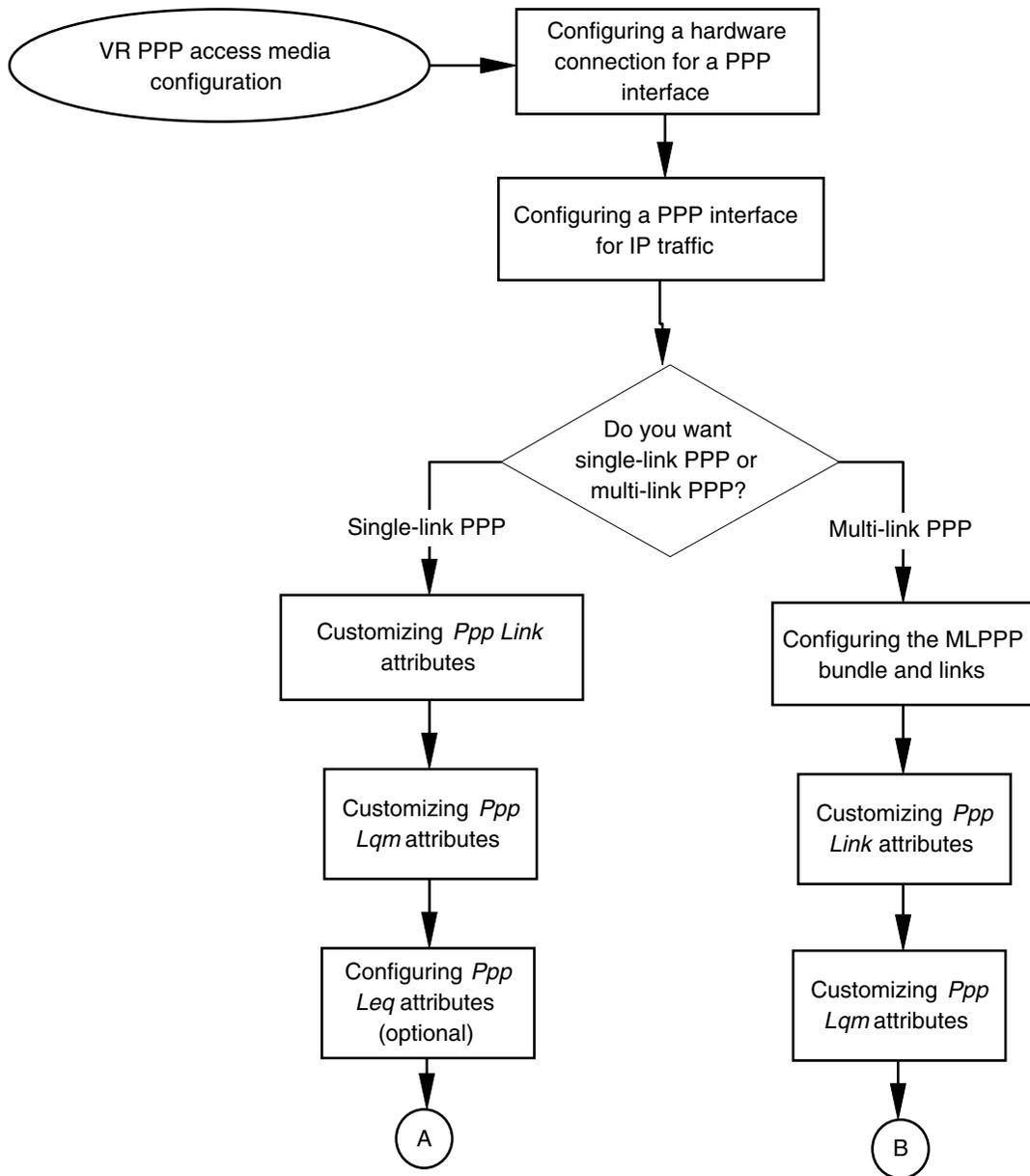
If you want to set up PPP to ATM interworking, see [PPP \(single-link or multi-link\) to ATM interworking configuration \(page 241\)](#).

### VR PPP access media configuration procedures

This task flow shows you the sequence of procedures you perform to configure point-to-point protocol (PPP). To link to any procedure, go to [VR PPP access media configuration procedure navigation \(page 74\)](#).



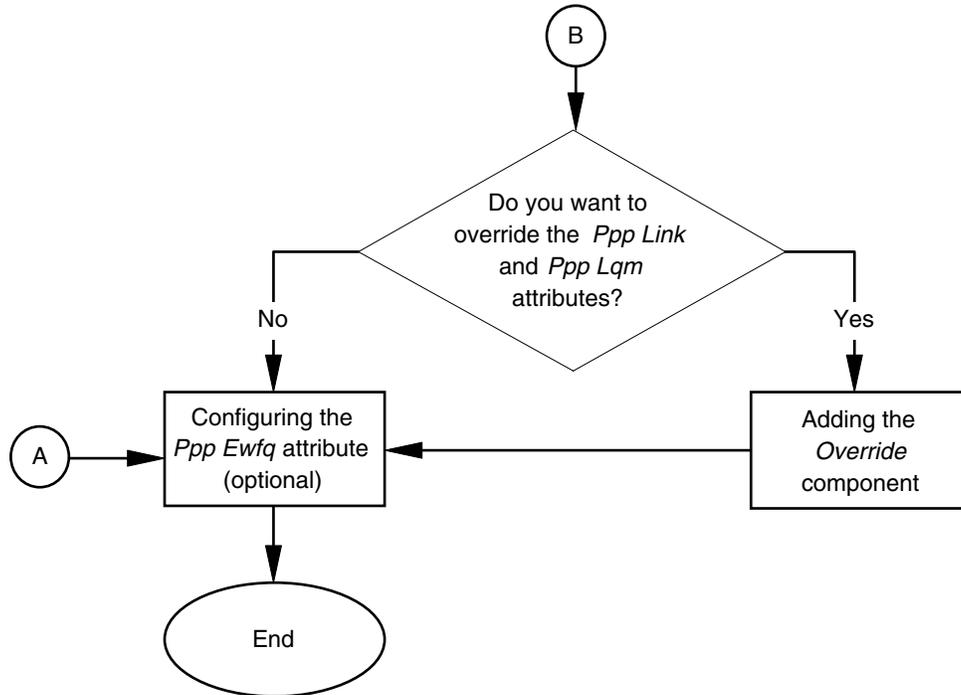
VR PPP access media configuration procedures, part 1 of 2



MSS 4001 040 AA



**VR PPP access media configuration procedures, part 2 of 2**



MSS 4001 041 AA

**VR PPP access media configuration procedure navigation**

- [Configuring a hardware connection for a PPP interface \(page 75\)](#)
- [Configuring a PPP interface for IP traffic \(page 77\)](#)
- [Customizing Ppp Link attributes \(page 78\)](#)
- [Customizing Ppp Lqm attributes \(page 80\)](#)
- [Customizing Ppp Leq attributes \(page 81\)](#)
- [Configuring the MLPPP bundle and links \(page 83\)](#)
- [Adding the Override component \(page 85\)](#)
- [Configuring the PPP Ewfq attributes \(page 87\)](#)



---

## Configuring a hardware connection for a PPP interface

Configure a hardware connection for a PPP interface to route IP packets directly to the link.

---

**Attention:** This procedure uses a Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400 node and an MSA32 E1 function processor (FP), as an example.

---

### Prerequisites

- You must ensure that the *applicationVersionList (Avl)* attribute of the node includes *wanDte*. For more information on displaying and adding an *Avl* attribute, see NN10600-550 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Common Configuration Procedures*.
- You must ensure that the *featureList (fl)* attribute of the node includes the *ppp* and *ip* features. For more information on displaying and adding a software feature to the *logicalProcessorType (Lpt)* component, see NN10600-550 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Common Configuration Procedures*.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add a logical processor (LP).  <b>add Lp/&lt;a&gt;</b>  For details on setting the <i>logicalProcessorType</i> , <i>mainCard</i> and <i>spareCard</i> attributes, refer to the procedure on adding an LP and linking it to an LPT in NN10600-550 <i>Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Common Configuration Procedures</i> .
2	Add a port to the logical processor. In this example, an E1 port is added. The system automatically adds channel 0 when you add a port.  <b>add Lp/&lt;a&gt; E1/&lt;b&gt;</b>
3	Configure the timeslots of the hardware connection.  <b>set Lp/&lt;a&gt; E1/&lt;b&gt; Chan/0 timeslots &lt;timeslots&gt;</b>

---

--End--

---

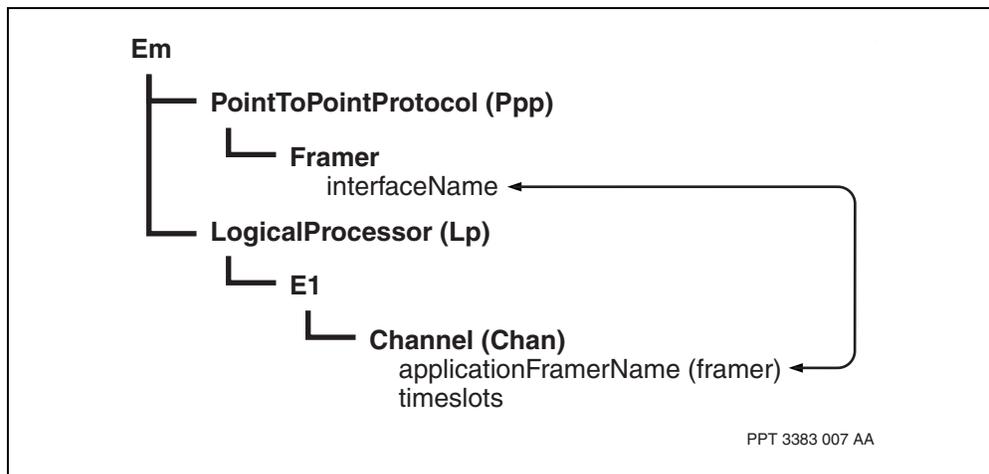


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<a>	is the instance number of the Lp.
<b>	is the instance number of the port.
<timeslots>	contains the list of timeslots that are used by the <i>Channel</i> component.

### Procedure job aid

#### Hardware connection for a PPP interface component hierarchy





## Configuring a PPP interface for IP traffic

Configure a PPP interface for IP traffic to provide a PPP connection between a Nortel Multiservice Switch node and the IP network.

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Add a PPP link level protocol interface application to the root component. <b>add Ppp/&lt;n&gt;</b>
2	Link the PPP service to the hardware component. <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Framer interfaceName &lt;interfaceName&gt;</b>
3	If you are linking PPP to a specific protocol, link PPP to Vr Pp by updating the attribute <i>linkToProtocolPort</i> .
4	If you are linking PPP to a specific application and did not link PPP to a specific protocol, link Ppp to Rtr Vrf If PppApplication by updating the attribute <i>linkToApplication</i> . See NN10600-803 <i>Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP VPN Configuration Management</i> .

--End--

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<interfaceName>	specifies a hardware component name. This attribute defines the logical processor on which the <i>Framer</i> component will run.
<n>	is the number of the PPP instance.



---

## Customizing *Ppp Link* attributes

Customize *Ppp Link* attributes to provide additional capabilities.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Change the maximum receive unit (MRU) negotiated with the peer PPP application. <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Link configInitialMru &lt;mru&gt;</b>
2	Use <i>magic number</i> negotiation to detect looped back <i>link</i> connections. <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Link configMagicNumber &lt;cmn&gt;</b>
3	Set the <i>link</i> continuity monitor (LCM). <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Link continuityMonitor &lt;monitor&gt;</b>
4	Customize the elapsed time after which PPP attempts to connect with its peer. <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Link restartTimer &lt;resTime&gt;</b>
5	Customize the number of <i>Lcp</i> configuration request retries before entering the stopped state. <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Link configureRequestTries &lt;tries&gt;</b>
6	Customize the number of <i>Lcp</i> negative acknowledgements (Naks) that the PPP application sends out when it receives <i>Lcp</i> configure requests that are not expected. <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Link negativeAckTries &lt;negTries&gt;</b>
7	Customize the number of <i>Lcp</i> terminate request packets a PPP application sends out when it terminates a PPP connection. <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Link terminateRequestTries &lt;terTries&gt;</b>
8	Set the quality threshold to a percentage of good packets required to maintain the <i>link</i> connection, when <i>Lqm</i> is enabled. <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Link qualityThreshold &lt;quality&gt;</b>
9	Customize the quality window during which <i>Lqm</i> examines link quality reporting (LQR) samples to determine what the quality has been over the history of the PPP connection. <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Link qualityWindow &lt;window&gt;</b>

---

--End--

---

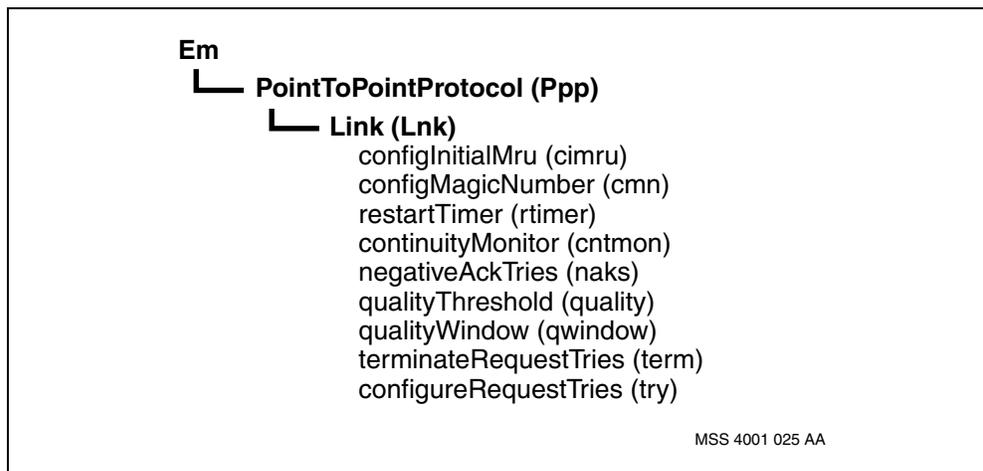


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<cmn>	is the magic number negotiation variable, which detects looped back <i>link</i> connections. Value is enabled or disabled.
<monitor>	is the attribute that turn the Link Continuity Monitor on or off. Value is enabled or disabled.
<mru>	is the size in bytes of the MRU.
<n>	is the number of the PPP instance.
<negTries>	is the number of negative acknowledgements the PPP application sends out before entering the stopped state.
<quality>	is the number of good packets required to maintain the link connection before the link is disabled.
<resTime>	is the elapsed time after which PPP attempts to connect with its peer.
<terTries>	is the number of terminate request packets sent out.
<tries>	is the number of LCP configuration request retries before entering the stopped state.
<window>	is the time in seconds of the quality window.

### Procedure job aid

#### *Ppp Link* component hierarchy





## Customizing *Ppp Lqm* attributes

Customize *Ppp Lqm* (link quality monitor) attributes to provide additional capabilities.

### Procedure steps

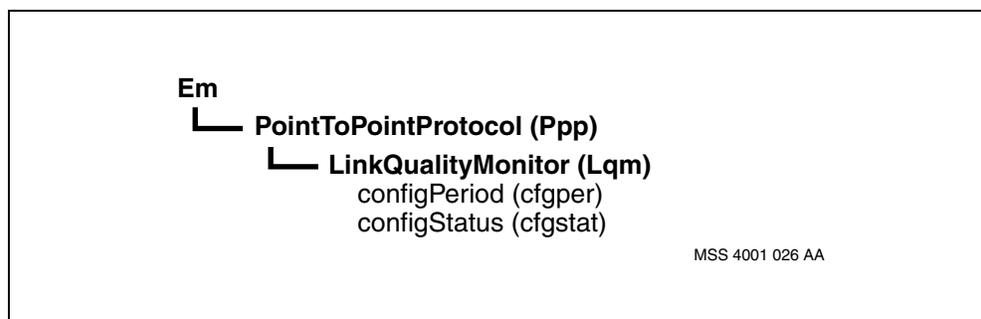
Step	Action
1	Change the status of the <i>Lqm</i> component. <code>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Lqm configStatus &lt;status&gt;</code>
2	Customize the <i>Lqm</i> reporting period used by the PPP connection. <code>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Lqm configPeriod &lt;period&gt;</code>
--End--	

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<n>	is the number of the PPP instance.
<period>	is the period time in centiseconds.
<status>	is the <i>Lqm</i> component status. Value is enabled or disabled.

### Procedure job aid

#### *Ppp Lqm* component hierarchy





## Customizing *Ppp Leq* attributes

Customize *Ppp Leq* (link emission queue) attributes to provide additional capabilities. The *PPP Leq* subcomponent is supported only on Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400 nodes with SBIC-based FPs.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add the <i>Leq</i> subcomponent. <b>add Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Leq</b>
2	Define the maximum number of packets allowed in the link emission queue ( <i>Leq</i> ). <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Leq maxPackets &lt;maxPackets&gt;</b>
3	Define the maximum amount of data allowed in the queue at any given time. <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Leq maxMsecData &lt;maxMsecPackets&gt;</b>
4	Restrict the percentage of multicast packets allowed in the queue. <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Leq maxPercentMulticast &lt;maxPercentMulticast&gt;</b>
5	Ensure old packets on the queue are discarded if they are not transmitted. <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Leq timeToLive &lt;timeToLive&gt;</b>

---

--End--

---

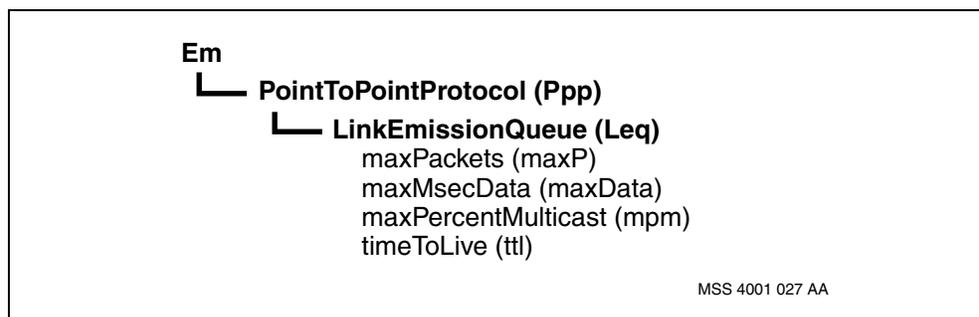


## Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<n>	is the number of the PPP instance.
<maxMsecPackets>	is the maximum amount of data, in milliseconds, allowed in the queue at any given time.
<maxPackets>	is the maximum number of packets allowed in the link emission queue ( <i>Leq</i> ).
<maxPercentMulticast>	is the percentage of multicast packets allowed in the queue.
<timeToLive>	is the time, in milliseconds, for packets to live in the queue before they are discarded, if not transmitted.

## Procedure job aid

### *PPP Leq* component hierarchy





## Configuring the MLPPP bundle and links

Configure the multi-link point-to-point protocol (MLPPP) bundle and links to aggregate multiple physical links into a single logical data link and to provide increased data rate for the PPP service.

### Prerequisites

- You must ensure that the *applicationVersionList (Avl)* attribute of the node includes *mlppp*. For more information on displaying and adding an *Avl* attribute, see NN10600-550 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Common Configuration Procedures*.
- You must ensure that the *featureList (fl)* attribute of the node includes the *mlppp* and *ip* features. For more information on displaying and adding a software feature to the *logicalProcessorType (Lpt)* component, see NN10600-550 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Common Configuration Procedures*.

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Delete the <i>Framer</i> component. <b>delete Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Framer</b>
2	Add the <i>MlpppFramer (MlFramer)</i> component. You are creating a MLPPP bundle. <b>add Ppp/&lt;n&gt; MlFramer</b>
3	Optionally, set the <i>fragmentSize (fragSize)</i> attribute. <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; MlFramer fragSize &lt;fragSize&gt;</b>
4	Optionally, set the <i>ep0Treatment</i> attribute. <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; MlFramer ep0Treatment &lt;ep0Treatment&gt;</b>
5	Optionally, set the <i>configMrru (cmrru)</i> attribute. <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; MlFramer cmrru &lt;cmrru&gt;</b>
6	Set the <i>endpointDiscriminator (epd)</i> attribute. <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; MlFramer epd &lt;epd&gt;</b>
7	Add the <i>MlpppLink (Lk)</i> component. <b>add Ppp/&lt;n&gt; MlFramer Lk/&lt;Lk&gt;</b>
8	Set the <i>interfaceName</i> attribute. <b>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; MlFramer Lk/&lt;Lk&gt; interfaceName &lt;interfaceName&gt;</b>



- 9 If you want to add more links to the MLPPP bundle, repeat [step 7](#) and [step 8](#).
- 10 Activate the provisioning changes. For more information, see [Activating configuration changes \(page 334\)](#).

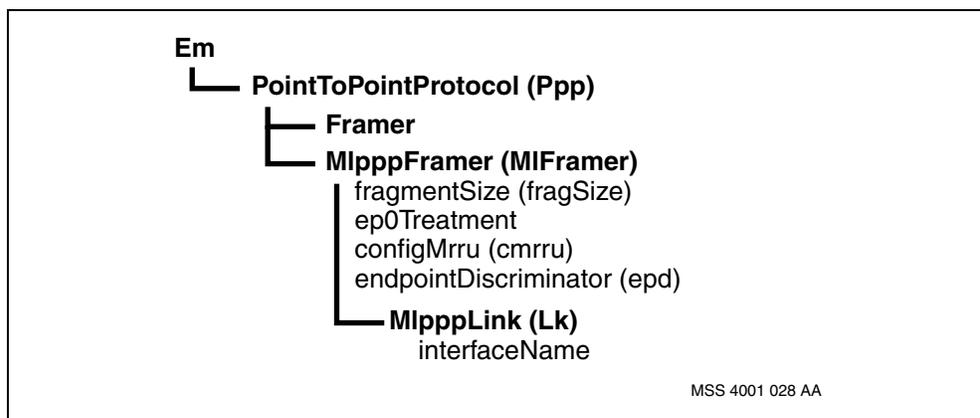
--End--

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<cmrru>	specifies the maximum receive reconstructed unit (MRRU) that the local MLPPP bundle advertises to the remote entity.
<ep0Treatment>	specifies the handling of egress frames sent at the emission priority (EP) 0.
<epd>	specifies if the endpoint discriminator is used during the configuration phase of a link.
<fragSize>	is the maximum fragment size in octets for the payload. The fragment size does not include the 8 octets for the MLPPP header or the 4 octets for the frame check sequence (FCS).
<interfaceName>	specifies a hardware component name. This attribute defines the logical processor on which the <i>MlpppLink</i> component will run.
<Lk>	is the individual link within a multi-link PPP bundle, with a value between 0 and 15.
<n>	is the instance number of the PPP.

### Procedure job aid

#### MLPPP bundle and links component hierarchy





---

## Adding the *Override* component

Add the *Override* component to apply a different *PPP Link* or *PPP Lqm* attribute value to one or more links in the MLPPP bundle.

---

**Attention:** This procedure uses a Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400 node and an MSA32 E1 function processor (FP), as an example.

---

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add the <i>Override (Ov)</i> component. <code>add Ppp/&lt;n&gt; MlFramer Lk/&lt;Lk&gt; Ov</code>
2	Set the attribute that you want to override. <code>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; MlFramer Lk/&lt;Lk&gt; Ov &lt;attribute&gt; &lt;value&gt;</code>
3	Activate the provisioning changes. For more information, see <a href="#">Activating configuration changes (page 334)</a> .
4	Lock the physical port associated with the link. <code>lock Lp/&lt;a&gt; E1/&lt;b&gt; Channel1/0</code>
5	Unlock the physical port associated with the link. <code>unlock Lp/&lt;a&gt; E1/&lt;b&gt; Channel1/0</code>

---

--End--

---

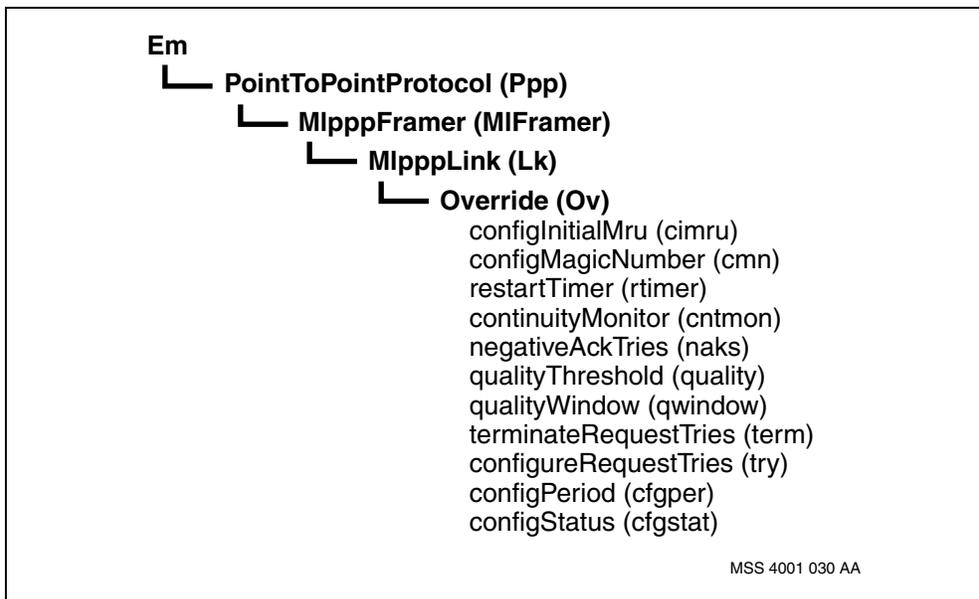


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<a>	is the instance number of the Lp.
<attribute>	specifies the attribute provisioned under the <i>PPP</i> component which value you want to override. The attributes that you can override are included in the procedures, <a href="#">Customizing Ppp Link attributes (page 78)</a> and <a href="#">Customizing Ppp Lqm attributes (page 80)</a> .
<b>	is the instance number of the port.
<Lk>	is the individual link within a multi-link PPP bundle.
<n>	is the instance number of the PPP.
<value>	is the value of the attribute that you want to override.

### Procedure job aid

#### Override component hierarchy





---

## Configuring the *PPP Ewfq* attributes

Optionally, configure the *Ppp Ewfq* attributes to redistribute the weighted fair queuing (WFQ) servicing values among the queues to satisfy the end user requirements.

There are four queues in this *Ppp Ewfq* group. The sum of their values must be a maximum total of 100. Queue 0 is used by the highest priority traffic and Queue 3 is for the lowest priority traffic.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add the <i>EgressWeightedFairQueuing (Ewfq)</i> component. <code>add Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Efwq</code>
2	Set the <i>egressServicingForQueue0 (q0)</i> attribute. <code>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Efwq q0 &lt;q0&gt;</code>
3	Set the <i>egressServicingForQueue1 (q1)</i> attribute. <code>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Efwq q1 &lt;q1&gt;</code>
4	Set the <i>egressServicingForQueue2 (q2)</i> attribute. <code>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Efwq q2 &lt;q2&gt;</code>
5	Set the <i>egressServicingForQueue3 (q3)</i> attribute. <code>set Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Efwq q3 &lt;q3&gt;</code>

---

--End--

---

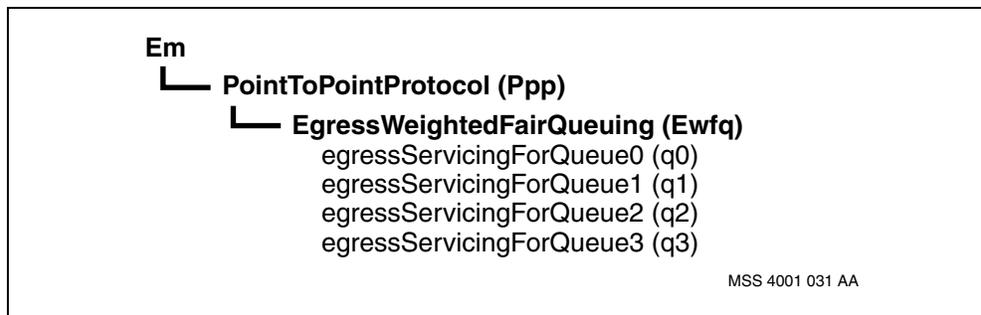


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<n>	is the number of the PPP instance.
<q0>	specifies the transmission frequency of queue 0 as a percentage: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• of the total (100) port capacity, for PPP</li> <li>• of the total (100) bundle (group of ports) capacity, for MLPPP</li> </ul>
<q1>	specifies the transmission frequency of queue 1 as a percentage: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• of the total (100) port capacity, for PPP</li> <li>• of the total (100) bundle (group of ports) capacity, for MLPPP</li> </ul>
<q2>	specifies the transmission frequency of queue 2 as a percentage: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• of the total (100) port capacity, for PPP</li> <li>• of the total (100) bundle (group of ports) capacity, for MLPPP</li> </ul>
<q3>	specifies the transmission frequency of queue 3 as a percentage: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• of the total (100) port capacity, for PPP</li> <li>• of the total (100) bundle (group of ports) capacity, for MLPPP</li> </ul>

### Procedure job aid

#### *Ppp Ewfq* component hierarchy





---

## Virtual router configuration

---

Configure the virtual router on Nortel Multiservice Switch nodes to provide a mechanism to segregate router traffic and maintenance activities based on logical separation of ports into separate VRs.

---

**Attention:** The 2-port 100baseT FP supports up to two VRs, one per port.

---

### Prerequisites to virtual router configuration

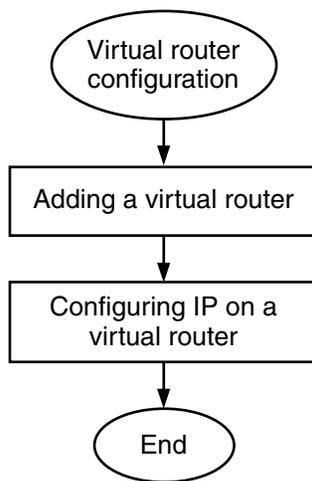
- Download all required software applications. See NN10600-270 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Software Installation*.
- For information on software applications and their associated feature names for IP, see NN10600-800 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP Technology Fundamentals*.

### Virtual router configuration procedures

This task flow shows you the sequence of procedures you perform to configure the virtual router on Nortel Multiservice Switch nodes. To link to any procedure, go to [Virtual router configuration procedure navigation \(page 90\)](#).



### Virtual router configuration procedures



PPT 3493 018 AA

### Virtual router configuration procedure navigation

- [Adding a virtual router \(page 91\)](#)
- [Configuring IP on a virtual router \(page 93\)](#)



## Adding a virtual router

Add a virtual router (VR) on Nortel Multiservice Switch nodes to emulate a physical router.

### Prerequisites

	<p><b>CAUTION</b> <b>Moving, deleting, or locking the management VR</b></p> <p>The first VR that you create on a node is, by default, the management VR. Once you have activated your provisioning (edit) view, you cannot designate any other VR on the node as the management VR. Deleting or locking the management VR once you have activated your provisioning (edit) view results in loss of connectivity to the node.</p>
--	--

- In cases where a Multiservice Switch node supports multiple VRs, choose names that easily identify each VR.

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Add a <i>Vr</i> component. <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt;</code>
2	Specify where the virtual router resides. <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; vrp lp/&lt;vr_lp&gt;</code>

--End--

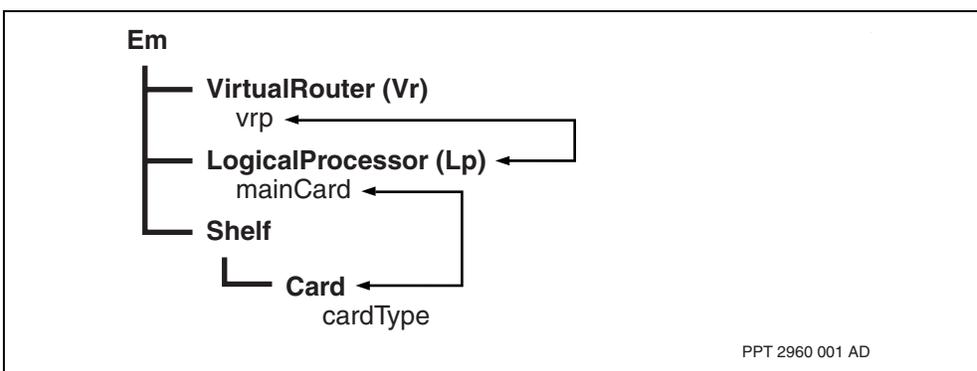


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.
<vr_lp>	is the instance value of the logical processor that is linked to the card on the node where the virtual router resides.

### Procedure job aid

#### Virtual router component hierarchy





---

## Configuring IP on a virtual router

Configure IP on a virtual router to give IP connectivity to a Nortel Multiservice Switch node.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add an <i>Ip</i> component as a subcomponent of the <i>Vr</i> component. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip</b>
2	Optionally, change the default cache table size by provisioning a cache table size for a single LP. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip cacheTableSize &lt;lp_id&gt; &lt;cache_size&gt;</b>
3	Optionally, set the source route attribute. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip sourceRoute &lt;sr_option&gt;</b>
4	Modify differentiated services code point (DCSP) marking. Refer to NN10600-809 <i>Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Layer 3 Traffic Management Configuration</i> for more information.

---

**Attention:** For a list of available attributes, refer to the *Vr* section of NN10600-060 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Component Reference*.

---

--End--

---

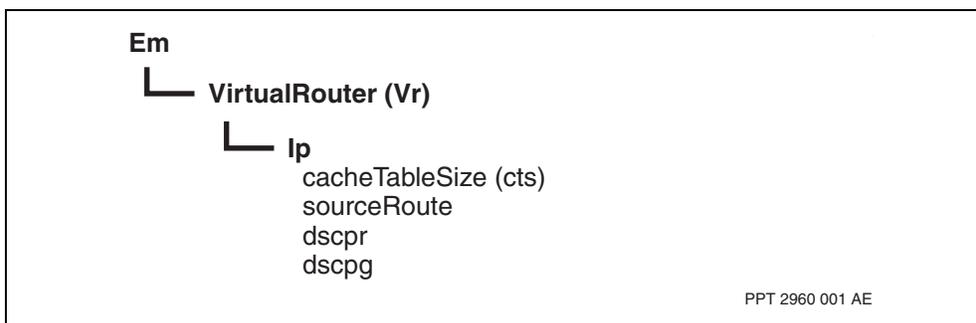


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<cache_size>	is the value of the cache size you want to provision for a particular LP.  If you choose not to use the default values, you must make cache table size adjustments in multiples of 100. For more information on managing the cache table, see the section on cache table size in NN10600-800 <i>Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP Technology Fundamentals</i> .
<lp_id>	is the instance value assigned in the IP subcomponent to a particular LP.
<sr_option>	is the provisionable attribute <i>sourceRoute</i> under the <i>Ip</i> component allows you to enable or disable the processing of input datagrams that have a source route IP option on a VR basis. The default value is disabled. For more information, see NN10600-800 <i>Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP Technology Fundamentals</i> .
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.
<dscp_value>	is the specific DSCP value you wish to assign for that packet type (Default = 0(df) for <i>dscpg</i> and 48 (cs6) for <i>dscpr</i> ).

### Procedure job aid

#### IP on a virtual router component hierarchy





---

# Protocol ports configuration

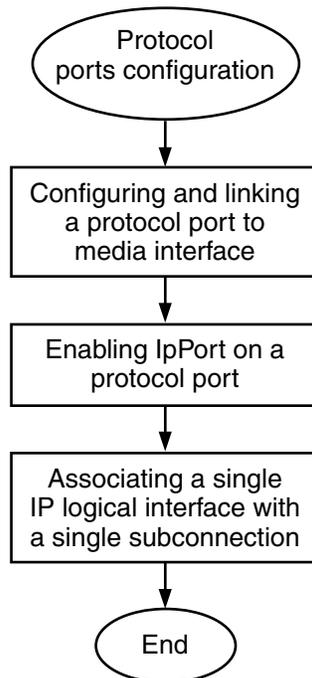
---

Configure the protocol ports on Nortel Multiservice Switch nodes to provide a link to the access media that will carry IP traffic.

## Protocol ports configuration procedures

This task flow shows you the sequence of procedures you perform to configure the protocol ports on Nortel Multiservice Switch nodes. To link to any procedure, go to [Protocol ports configuration procedure navigation \(page 95\)](#).

### Protocol ports configuration procedures



PPT 3493 019 AA

### Protocol ports configuration procedure navigation

- [Configuring and linking a protocol port to a media interface \(page 97\)](#)



- [Enabling IpPort on a protocol port \(page 99\)](#)
- [Associating a single IP logical interface with a single subconnection \(page 101\)](#)



## Configuring and linking a protocol port to a media interface

Configure and link a protocol port to a media interface to represent a physical instance of a data link or media protocol. You can configure multiple protocol ports on a virtual router.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add a <i>ProtocolPort</i> component as a subcomponent of the <i>Vr</i> component. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;pp_name&gt;</b>
2	Configure the association between the media interface and the <i>ProtocolPort</i> component by setting the <i>linkToProtocolPort</i> attribute: <b>set &lt;media_interface&gt; linkToProtocolPort Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;pp_name&gt;</b>

---

--End--

---

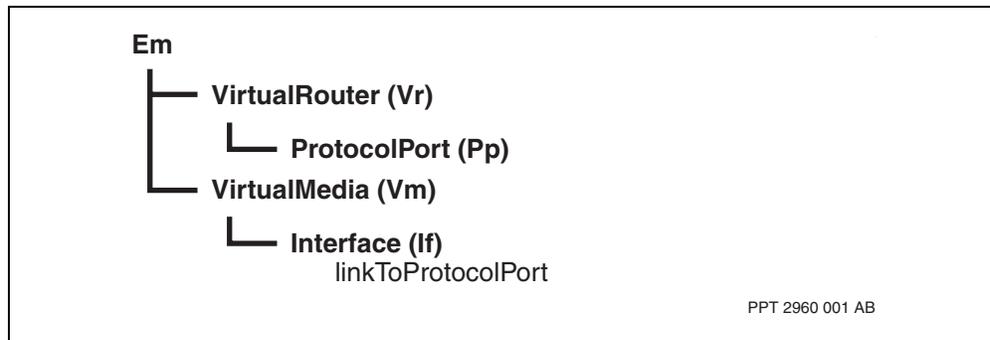


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<media_interface>	<p>is the interface name created during the provisioning of a particular medium. Application name values are formatted as a component type/instance value, for example, LA/31.</p> <p>If you are configuring IP over frame relay using frame relay DTE, the media interface is a frame relay remote group, for example, <i>FrDte/&lt;n&gt; Rg/1</i>. For more information, see <a href="#">Frame relay DTE access media configuration (page 34)</a>.</p> <p>If you are configuring IP over frame relay using an IP-optimized DLCI, the media interface is an IP DLCI group, for example, <i>IpDlciGroupr/&lt;n&gt;</i>. For more information, see <a href="#">VR IP-optimized DLCI access media configuration (page 53)</a>.</p> <p>If you are configuring an IP tunnel, the media interface is the IP tunnel interface, for example, <i>Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; IP Tunnel Sep/&lt;sep_id&gt;</i>. For more information, see <a href="#">Configuring PTP tunnels (page 213)</a>.</p>
<pp_name>	is the name of the protocol port.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### Configuring and linking protocol ports to the media interface component hierarchy





---

## Enabling IpPort on a protocol port

Enable IP on a protocol port by adding an *IpPort* component to the *ProtocolPort* component. That enables IP routing on that port.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add an <i>IpPort</i> component as a subcomponent of the <i>ProtocolPort</i> component.  <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort</b>
2	Add an IP logical interface.  <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort LogicalIf/&lt;ip_addr&gt;</b>  You can configure an IP logical interface against a specific media subconnection, which gives each subconnection its own subnet. See <a href="#">Associating a single IP logical interface with a single subconnection (page 101)</a> to complete this procedure.
3	Provision a network mask for the protocol port. For networks that contain routers running RIP version I, the netmask should be the same for all RIP interfaces.  <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort LogicalIf/&lt;ip_addr&gt; netMask &lt;netmask&gt;</b>
4	Provision a broadcast address for the <i>ProtocolPort</i> component.  <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort LogicalIf/&lt;ip_addr&gt; broadcastAddress &lt;broadcast_addr&gt;</b>

---

--End--

---

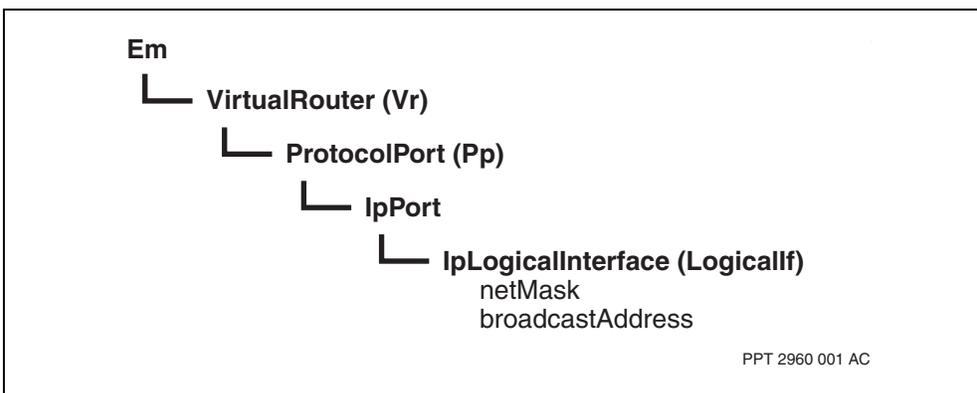


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<broadcast_addr>	is the broadcast address of the attached IP network or subnetwork.
<ip_addr>	is the 32-bit IP address assigned to this logical interface.
<netmask>	is the network mask to be used with the IP address.
<pp_name>	is the name of the protocol port.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### IP on a protocol port component hierarchy





---

## Associating a single IP logical interface with a single subconnection

Associate a single IP logical interface with a single subconnection when you want each subconnection to support a specific IP subnet.

### Prerequisites

- The required access media has been provisioned. See one of the following:
  - [VR ATM MPE access media configuration \(page 15\)](#)
  - [Frame relay DTE access media configuration \(page 34\)](#)
  - [VR IP-optimized DLCI access media configuration \(page 53\)](#)

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Configure the association between the IP logical interface and the subconnection.  <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort LogicalIf/&lt;ip_addr&gt; linkToMediaConnection &lt;media_subconnection&gt;</b>

---

--End--

---

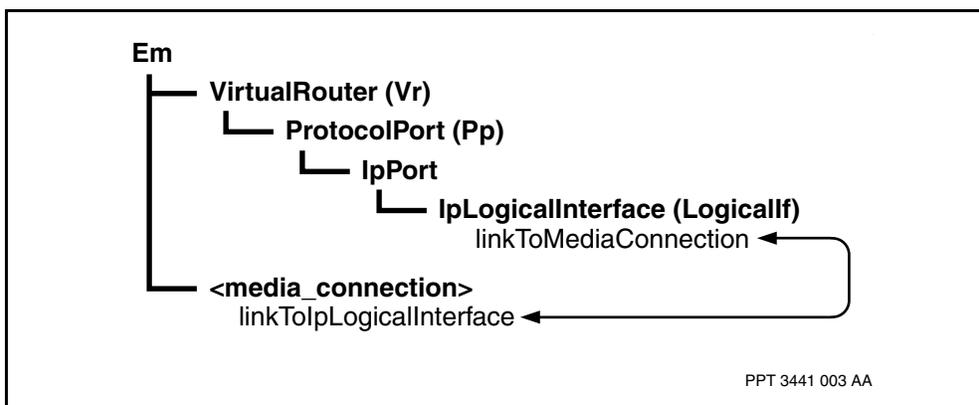


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<ip_addr>	is the 32-bit IP address assigned to this logical interface.
<media_subconnection>	is the required media subconnection, which can be <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• for FrDte, component <i>FrDte StaticDlci</i></li><li>• for IP-optimized DLCI, component <i>IpDlciGroup Frc</i></li><li>• for ATM MPE, component <i>AtmMpe Ac</i></li></ul>
<pp_name>	is the name of the protocol port.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### Single IP logical interface with a single subconnection component hierarchy





---

# VR routing protocol configuration

---

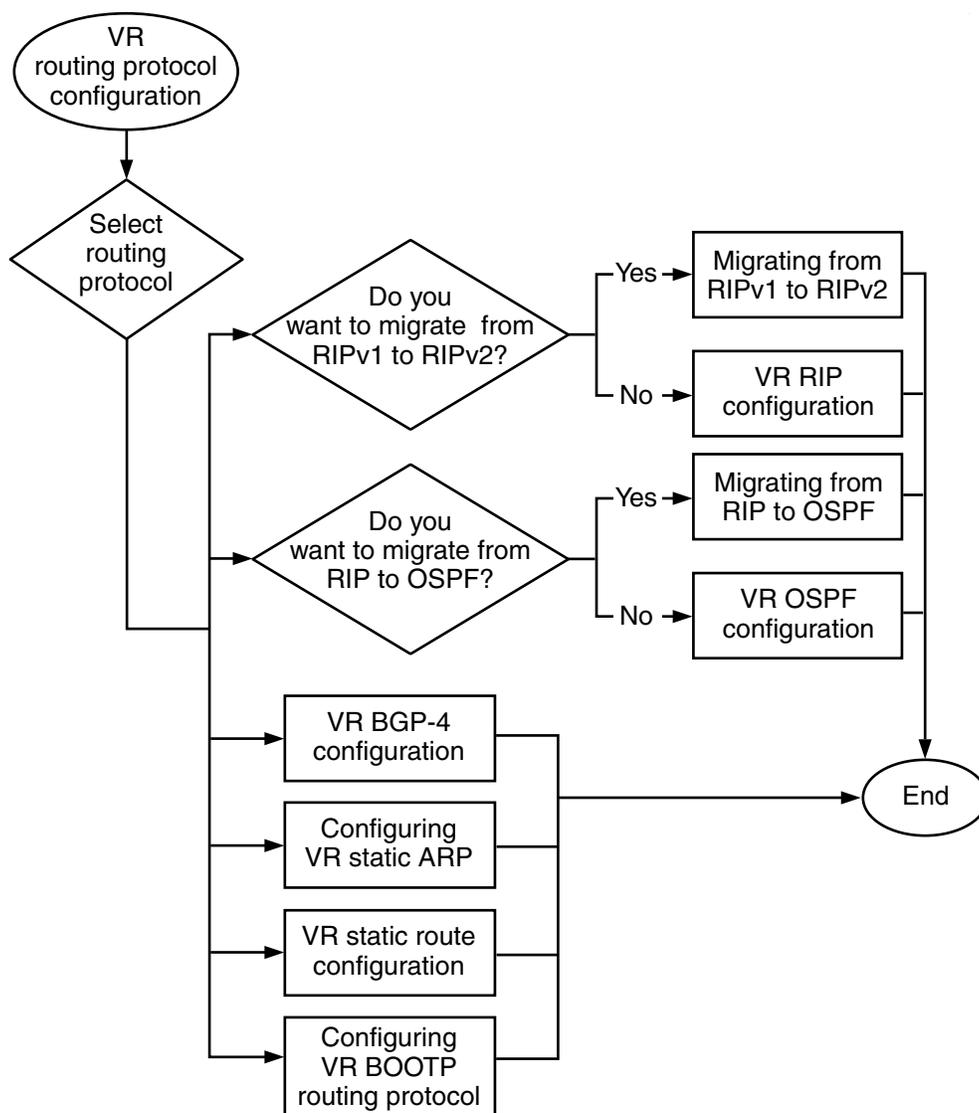
Configure VR routing protocols to establish dynamic routing protocols and static routes that enable the exchange of route information.

## VR routing protocol configuration tasks

This work flow shows you the sequence of tasks you perform to configure VR routing protocols. To link to any task, go to [VR routing protocol configuration task navigation \(page 104\)](#).



## VR routing protocol configuration tasks



PPT 3493 021 AA

### VR routing protocol configuration task navigation

- [Migrating from RIPv1 to RIPv2 \(page 117\)](#)
- [VR RIP configuration \(page 106\)](#)
- [Migrating from RIP to OSPF \(page 121\)](#)
- [VR OSPF configuration \(page 123\)](#)
- [VR BGP-4 configuration \(page 151\)](#)
- [Configuring VR static ARP \(page 181\)](#)



- [VR static route configuration \(page 185\)](#)
- [Configuring VR BOOTP routing protocol \(page 198\)](#)



---

# VR RIP configuration

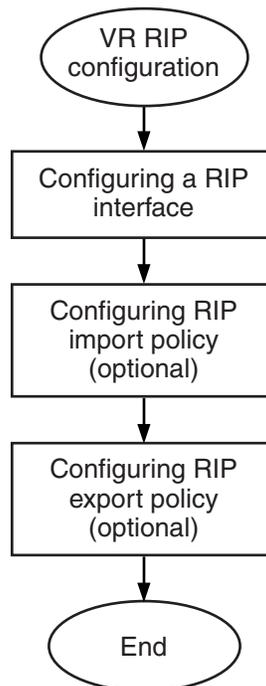
---

Configure the routing information protocol (RIP) to exchange routing information within a network or between networks using RIP.

## VR RIP configuration procedures

This task flow shows you the sequence of procedures you perform to configure RIP. To link to any procedure, go to [VR RIP configuration procedure navigation \(page 106\)](#).

### VR RIP configuration procedures



PPT 3493 007 AA

### VR RIP configuration procedure navigation

- [Configuring a RIP interface \(page 108\)](#)



- [Configuring RIP import policy \(page 111\)](#)
- [Configuring RIP export policy \(page 113\)](#)



## Configuring a RIP interface

Configure a routing information protocol (RIP) interface to exchange RIP routing information with a RIP neighbor.

### Prerequisites



**CAUTION**  
**Changing the value of the ripIf attribute**  
Changing the value of some of the *ripIf* component attributes (including *IfConfSend* or *ifConfReceive* attributes) will cause a brief interruption of service on the interface. For information on the behavior of these attributes, see NN10600-060 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Component Reference*.

- Configure protocol ports for each interface to be included in RIP routing exchanges. See [Configuring and linking a protocol port to a media interface \(page 97\)](#).
- Configure *LogicalIf* components for each interface to be included in RIP routing exchanges. See [Enabling IpPort on a protocol port \(page 99\)](#).

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Add a <i>Rip</i> component as a subcomponent of the <i>Ip</i> component. <pre>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Rip</pre>
2	If required, change the route preference. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Rip defaultRipRtePref &lt;route_pref&gt;</pre>
3	Add a <i>RipIf</i> component to at least one logical interface. <pre>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort LogicalIf/&lt;ipAddress&gt; RipIf</pre>
4	Set the version of RIP updates to send from this RIP interface. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort LogicalIf/&lt;ipAddress&gt; RipIf ifConfSend &lt;tx_value&gt;</pre>
5	Set the version of RIP updates to receive (accept) on this RIP interface. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort LogicalIf/&lt;ipAddress&gt; RipIf ifConfReceive &lt;rx_value&gt;</pre> <p>All other attributes under the <i>ripIf</i> component do not need to be changed from their default values.</p>
6	Optionally, add the <i>Neighbor</i> subcomponent. The <i>Neighbor</i> subcomponent of the <i>RipIf</i> component describes the RIP neighbor for this logical interface.



If this protocol port is configured as non-broadcast/multi-access (NBMA), as specified by the *lanModel* attribute under the *IpPort* subcomponent, then the *Neighbor* subcomponent must be provisioned.

```
add Vr/<vr_name> ProtocolPort/<pp_name> IpPort  
LogicalIf/<ipAddress> RipIf Neighbor/<remote_IpAddress>
```

---

--End--

---

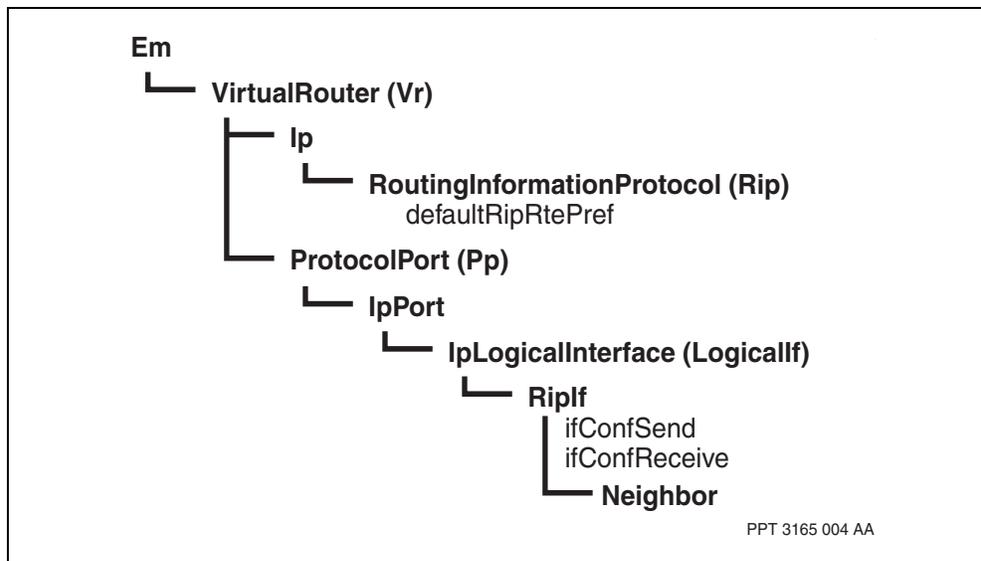


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<ipAddress>	is the IP address of the local interface.
<pp_name>	is the name of the protocol port.
<remote_ipAddress>	is the IP address of the remote neighbor interface.
<route_pref>	is the route preference.
<rx_value>	is the value you assign to the <i>ifConfReceive</i> attribute. This can be <i>v1</i> (allow reception of RIP 1 packets only), <i>v2</i> (allow reception of RIP 2 packets only), <i>both</i> (allow reception of both RIP 1 and RIP 2 packets), or <i>reject</i> (block receipt of RIP packets).
<tx_value>	is the value you assign to the <i>ifConfSend</i> attribute. This can be <i>v1</i> (send RIP 1 packets only), <i>v2</i> (multicast RIP 2 packets only), <i>v2b</i> (support RIP 2 packets only), or <i>silent</i> (block transmission of RIP packets).
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### RIP interface component hierarchy





## Configuring RIP import policy

Configure routing information protocol (RIP) import policy to define which routes learned from RIP neighbors are to be used, and what metrics to assign to them.

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Add an <i>Import</i> component to the <i>Rip</i> component. <pre>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Rip Import/&lt;import_policy_number&gt;</pre>
2	Set the <i>usageFlag</i> attribute to indicate whether the routes matching the criteria defined in this import policy are to be used or ignored. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Rip Import/&lt;import_policy_number&gt; usageflag &lt;usageflag_toggle&gt;</pre>
3	Set the <i>interface</i> attribute if you want this import policy to apply to all routes learned from RIP updates on a particular interface. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Rip Import/&lt;import_policy_number&gt; interface &lt;interface_instance&gt;</pre>
4	Set the <i>neighbor</i> attribute if you want this import policy to apply to all routes learned from a particular neighbor. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Rip Import/&lt;import_policy_number&gt; neighbor &lt;interface_instance&gt;</pre>
5	Set an import metric if you want to overwrite the learned metric of an imported route with a specified metric. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Rip Import/&lt;import_policy_number&gt; importMetric &lt;cost&gt;</pre>
6	Add one or more <i>Network</i> <i>&lt;ipaddress&gt;</i> <i>&lt;ipmask&gt;</i> components if you want to restrict the effects of this import policy to specified network ranges. <pre>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Rip Import/&lt;import_policy_number&gt; Network/&lt;net_instance&gt; set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Rip Import/&lt;import_policy_number&gt; Network/&lt;net_instance&gt; ipaddress &lt;ip_addr&gt;, ipmask &lt;ip_mask&gt;</pre>

--End--

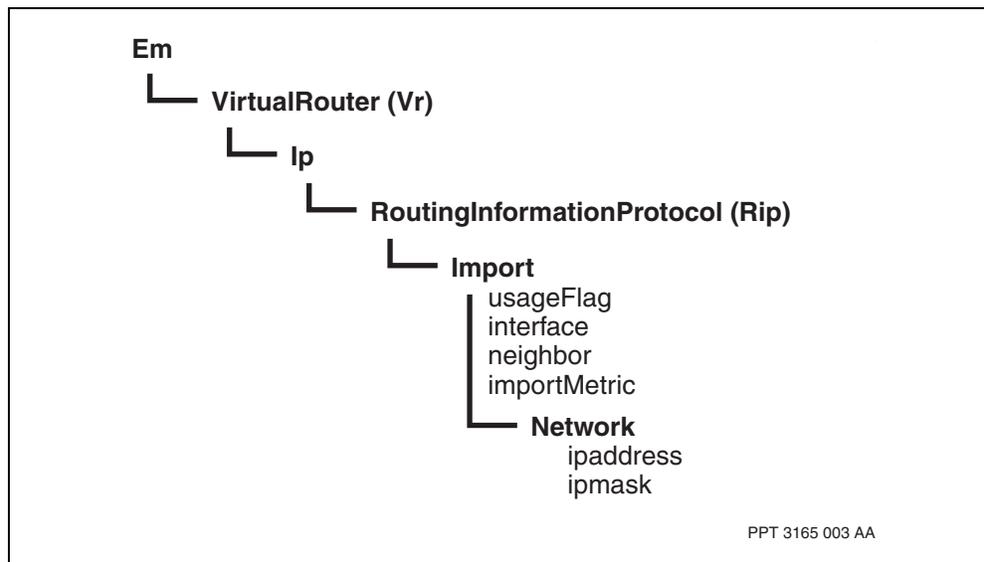


## Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<cost>	is a decimal metric cost to be used for the routes that match the criteria defined in this import policy.
<import_policy_number>	is the instance assigned to the import policy.
<ip_addr>	is the IP address of the network.
<interface_instance>	is the IP address of the interface from which the routing information is learned.
<ip_mask>	is the mask used by the network.
<net_instance>	is the instance assigned to this instance of the <i>Network</i> component.
<usageflag_toggle>	specifies whether to use or ignore routes which match the criteria defined in the import policy.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

## Procedure job aid

### RIP import policy component hierarchy





## Configuring RIP export policy

Configure routing information protocol (RIP) export policy to define which routing information to advertise to RIP neighbors and what metrics to use.

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Add an <i>Export</i> component to the <i>Rip</i> component. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Rip Export/&lt;export_policy_number&gt;</b>
2	Set the <i>advertiseStatus</i> attribute to indicate whether the routes matching the criteria defined in this export policy are to be sent or blocked. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Rip Export/&lt;export_policy_number&gt; advertiseStatus &lt;advertise_toggle&gt;</b>
3	Set the <i>ripInterface</i> attribute if you want this export policy to apply to all routes learned from RIP updates on a particular interface. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Rip Export/&lt;export_policy_number&gt; ripinterface &lt;ipAddress&gt;</b>  If you specify a RIP interface, set the <i>protocol</i> attribute to <i>rip</i> when you complete <a href="#">step 4</a> .
4	Optionally, set the <i>egpAsId</i> attribute if you want this export policy to apply to all routes learned from EGP which have the specified autonomous system identifier. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Rip Export/&lt;export_policy_number&gt; egpAsId &lt;egpAsId&gt;</b>  If you specify an <i>egpAsId</i> , set the <i>protocol</i> to <i>egp</i> in <a href="#">step 6</a> .
5	Optionally, set the <i>ospfTag</i> attribute if you want this export policy to apply to all routes learned from OSPF which have the specified OSPF tag. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Rip Export/&lt;export_policy_number&gt; ospfTag &lt;tag&gt;</b>  If you specify an <i>ospfTag</i> , set the <i>protocol</i> to <i>ospfExternal</i> in <a href="#">step 6</a> .
6	Set the <i>protocol</i> attribute if you want this export policy to apply to routes learned from a particular routing protocol <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Rip Export/&lt;export_policy_number&gt; protocol &lt;protocol_type&gt;</b>  Note that <i>bgpExternal</i> routes are not included when the <i>protocol</i> attribute is set to <i>all</i> .
7	If you want to export <i>bgpInternal</i> routes and you set the <i>protocol</i> attribute to <i>all</i> in <a href="#">step 4</a> , set the <i>redistributeIbgp</i> attribute as follows. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Rip redistributeIbgp true</b>



If you set the *protocol* attribute to *bgpInternal* in [step 4](#), you do not need to set the *redistributeIbgp* attribute.

- 8 Set the *exportMetric* attribute if you want to advertise the routes with a different metric than the one learned. Routes learned from other routing protocols may have metrics larger than the RIP maximum of 15, which results in them being treated as unreachable by RIP.

```
set Vr/<vr_name> Ip Rip Export/<export_policy_number>
exportMetric <cost>
```

- 9 Add one or more *Network* components if you want to restrict the effects of this export policy to specified network ranges.

```
add Vr/<vr_name> Ip Rip Export/<export_policy_number>
Network/<net_instance>
```

- 10 Set the *bgpAsId* attribute if you want this export policy to apply to all routes learned from BGP which have the specified autonomous system identifier.

```
set Vr/<vr_name> Ip Rip Export/<export_policy_number>
bgpAsId <bgpAsId>
```

- 11 If you want the routes matching the criteria defined in this export policy to be advertised only on a specific RIP interface, set the *outInterface* attribute.

```
set Vr/<vr_name> Ip Rip Export/<export_policy_number>
outif <interface_instance>, advertiseStatus block,
protocol rip
```

--End--

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<advertise_toggle>	specifies whether to advertise (send) or not advertise (block) routes that match the criteria defined in this export policy.
<cost>	is a decimal metric cost to be used for the routes that match the criteria defined in this export policy.
<bgpAsId>	is a decimal identifier for a BGP autonomous system.
<egpAsId>	is a decimal identifier for an EGP autonomous system.
<export_policy_number>	is the numeric designation assigned to the export policy.
<interface_instance>	is the IP address of the interface from which the routing information is learned.
<ip_addr>	is the IP address of the network.
<ipAddress>	is the IP address of the interface.
(1 of 2)	



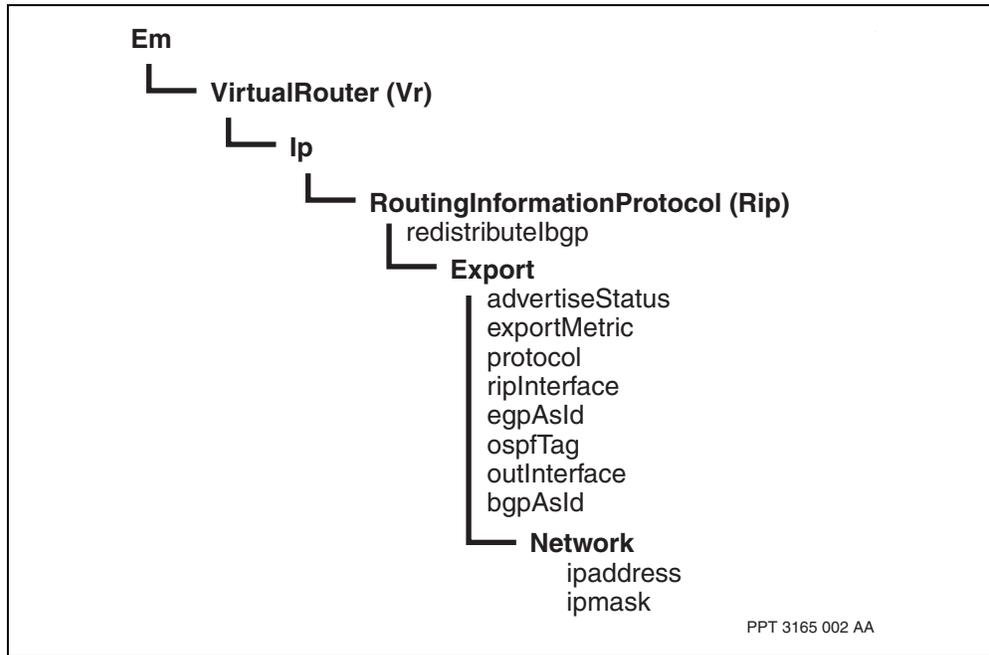
---

Variable	Value
<ip_mask>	is the mask used by the network.
<net_instance>	is the numeric designation assigned to this instance of the <i>Network</i> component.
<protocol_type>	<p>identifies the protocol(s) to which the export policy applies.</p> <p>If you set the <i>protocol</i> attribute to all, the export policy applies to all routes in the forwarding table except bgpInternal and bgpExternal.</p> <p>If you want to export bgpInternal routes, create an export policy with the <i>protocol</i> attribute set to bgpInternal, or see <a href="#">step 7</a>.</p> <p>If you want to export bgpExternal routes, create an export policy with the <i>protocol</i> attribute set to bgpExternal.</p>
<tag>	is a decimal number that corresponds to an OSPF tag value.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

(2 of 2)



**Procedure job aid**  
**RIP export policy component hierarchy**





---

# Migrating from RIPv1 to RIPv2

---

Migrate from routing information protocol (RIP) from RIPv1 to RIPv2 to take advantage of additional capabilities that provide more informed routing and reduced processing load.

Migrate all Nortel Multiservice Switch nodes on a link-by-link basis, until all the nodes in the network are set to RIPv2. The following steps are executed for each link. They are illustrated in figure [Example RIPv1 to RIPv2 migration using two nodes \(page 119\)](#). The table [Example RIPv1 to RIPv2 migration using two nodes \(page 119\)](#) provides more detail on RIP behavior with different combinations of *ifConfSend* and *ifConfReceive* values.

## Prerequisites

- To migrate Nortel Multiservice Switch network nodes from RIPv1 to RIPv2, all nodes must be running a release of software that supports RIPv2 (R5.1 and later). For more information, see NN10600-270 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Software Installation* and NN10600-272 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Upgrading Software*.

## Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Configure the RIP interface on Multiservice Switch 2 to send RIPv2 updates in such a way that RIPv1 can read them.  <b>set vr/&lt;vr_name2&gt; pp/&lt;pp_name&gt; ip log/&lt;ip_address&gt; RipIf ifConfSend rip1Compatible</b>
2	Configure the RIP interface on Multiservice Switch 1 to send and accept RIPv2 updates only.  <b>set vr/&lt;vr_name1&gt; pp/&lt;pp_name&gt; ip log/&lt;ip_address&gt; RipIf ifConfReceive ripVersion2 set vr/&lt;vr_name1&gt; pp/&lt;pp_name&gt; ip log/&lt;ip_address&gt; RipIf ifConfSend ripVersion2</b>
3	Configure the RIP interface on Multiservice Switch 2 to send and accept RIPv2 updates only.



---

```
set vr/<vr_name2> pp/<pp_name> ip log/<ip_address> RipIf  
ifConfReceive ripVersion2 set vr/<vr_name2> pp/<pp_name>  
ip log/<ip_address> RipIf ifConfSend ripVersion2
```

---

--End--

---

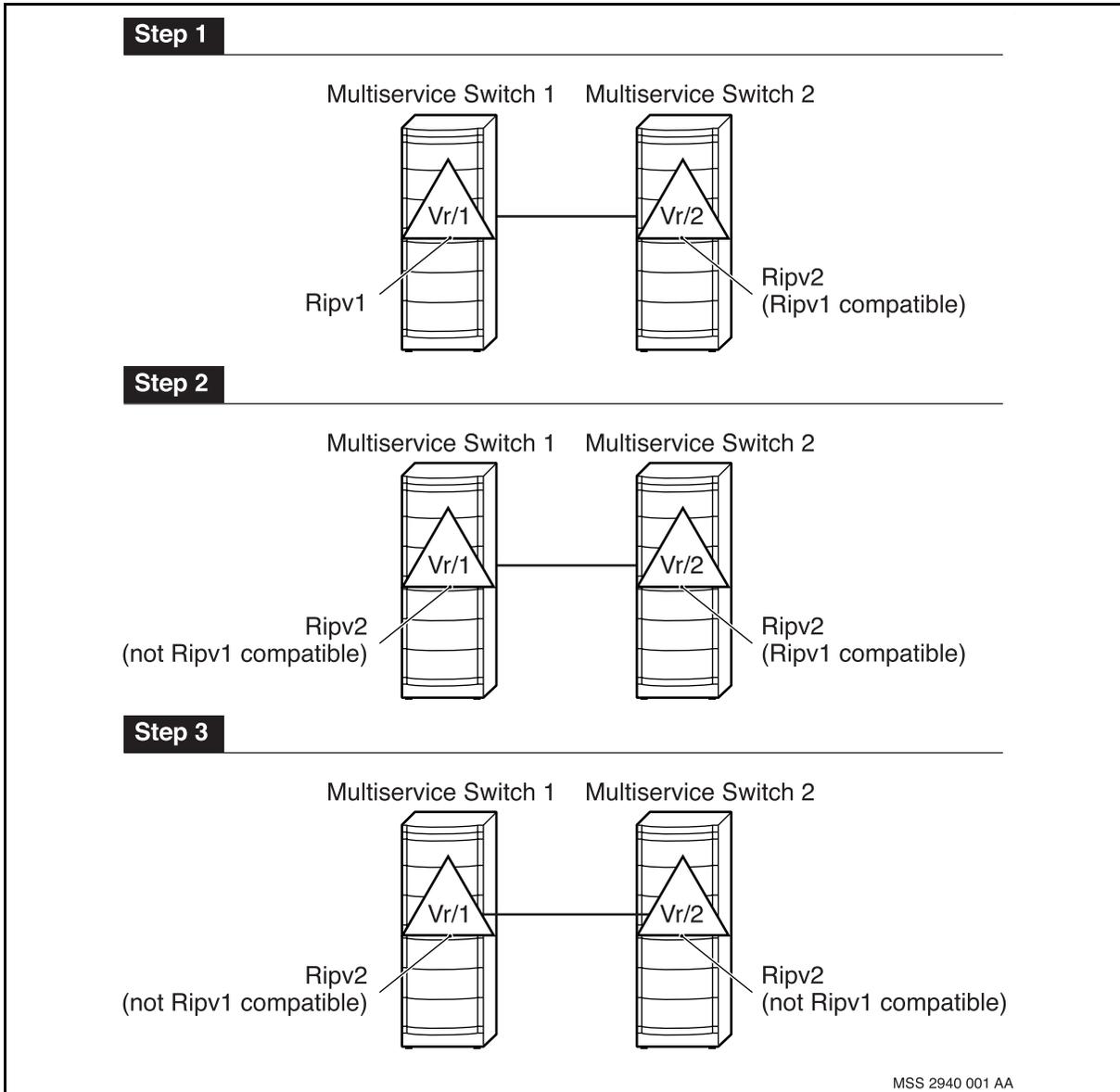
## Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<ip_address>	is the IP address of the local interface.
<pp_name>	is the name of the protocol port.
<vr_name1>	is the name of the first virtual router.
<vr_name2>	is the name of the second virtual router.



## Procedure job aid

### Example RIPv1 to RIPv2 migration using two nodes





**Example migration”RIP behavior of two nodes with different RIP configurations**

ifConfSend attribute value on Multiservice Switch 1 (Vr/1) (transmitting)	ifConfReceive attribute value on Multiservice Switch 2 (Vr/2) (receiving)			
	v1 (RIP 1)	v2 (RIP 2)	both (RIP 1 or 2)	reject (do not accept)
<i>silent</i> (do not send)	No transmission	No transmission	No transmission	No transmission/ updates are rejected.
v1 (RIP 1)	RIP 1 updates broadcast by Vr/1. RIP 1 updates accepted by Vr/2.	RIP 1 updates broadcast by Vr/1. RIP 1 updates rejected by Vr/2.	RIP 1 updates broadcast by Vr/1. RIP 1 updates accepted by Vr/2.  The Vr/2 RIP interface processes the updates as RIP 1 updates.	RIP 1 updates broadcast by Vr/1. RIP 1 updates are rejected by Vr/2.
v2b (RIP 1 compatible)	RIP 2 updates broadcast by Vr/1. RIP 2 updates accepted by Vr/2.  The Vr/2 RIP interface processes the RIP 2 updates as RIP 1 updates. (The Vr/2 RIP interface ignores the subnet mask and next hop fields in the RIP 2 update.)	RIP 2 updates broadcast by Vr/1. RIP 2 updates accepted by Vr/2.  Vr/2 RIP interface will process the subnet mask and next hop fields in the RIP 2 updates.	RIP 2 updates broadcast by Vr/1. RIP 2 updates accepted by Vr/2.  Vr/2 RIP interface will process the subnet mask and next hop fields in the RIP 2 updates.	RIP 2 updates broadcast by Vr/1. RIP 2 updates are rejected by Vr/2.
v2 (RIP 2)	RIP 2 updates are multicast by Vr/1.  Because the Vr/2 RIP interface is set for RIP 1 only, Vr/1 will not send RIP 2 updates to Vr/2.	RIP 2 updates are multicast by Vr/1. RIP 2 updates are accepted by Vr/2.  Vr/2 RIP interface will process the subnet mask and next hop fields in the RIP 2 updates.	RIP 2 updates are multicast by Vr/1. RIP 2 updates are accepted by Vr/2.  Vr/2 RIP interface will process the subnet mask and next hop fields in the RIP 2 updates.	Updates are rejected



---

# Migrating from RIP to OSPF

---

Migrate from routing information protocol (RIP) to open shortest path first (OSPF) to achieve more sophisticated routing, greater administrative control, and quicker convergence.

## Prerequisites

- Add OSPF to all the virtual routers to be migrated. See [Adding OSPF to a VR \(page 126\)](#).

## Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	<p>Change the route preference of either RIP or OSPF internal so that RIP routes are preferred over OSPF internal routes. This change must be done on all RIP and OSPF virtual routers in the network/autonomous system at the same time.</p> <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf defaultOspfIntRtePreference &lt;rte_pref&gt; or set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Rip defaultRipRtePreference &lt;rte_pref&gt;</pre>
2	<p>Add OSPF interfaces wherever there are RIP interfaces to be migrated. See <a href="#">Configuring an OSPF interface (page 132)</a>. See also chapter <a href="#">VR OSPF configuration (page 123)</a> for more information about configuring OSPF attributes.</p>
3	<p>After OSPF is stable and OSPF routes are as desired, change the route preference modified in <a href="#">step 1</a> back to the default value. This change must be done on all RIP and OSPF virtual routers in the network/autonomous system at the same time. OSPF will then be more preferred than RIP and the OSPF routes will begin to be used. Changing the route preference does not cause an interruption in service.</p>
4	<p>Delete the RIP interfaces which are no longer required.</p> <pre>delete Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Pp/&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort LogicalIf/ &lt;if_addr&gt; RipIf</pre>
5	<p>Delete the RIP components which are no longer required.</p>



---

```
delete Vr/<vr_name> Ip Rip
```

---

```
--End--
```

---

## Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<if_addr>	is the address of the logical interface.
<pp_name>	is the name of the protocol port.
<rte_pref>	is the value assigned to the route preference.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.



---

# VR OSPF configuration

---

Configure the open shortest path first (OSPF) routing protocol to exchange routing information within a network or between networks using OSPF.

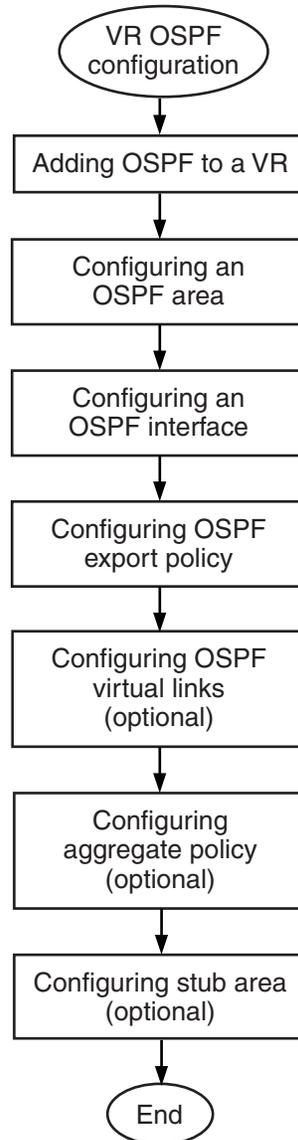
## VR OSPF configuration procedures

This task flow shows you the sequence of procedures you perform to configure OSPF. To link to any procedure, go to [VR OSPF configuration procedure navigation \(page 124\)](#).



---

## VR OSPF configuration procedures



MSS 3493 011 AA

### VR OSPF configuration procedure navigation

- [Adding OSPF to a VR \(page 126\)](#)
- [Configuring an OSPF area \(page 130\)](#)
- [Configuring an OSPF interface \(page 132\)](#)
- [Configuring OSPF export policy \(page 138\)](#)
- [Configuring OSPF virtual links \(page 142\)](#)
- [Configuring an aggregate policy \(page 147\)](#)



- [Configuring a stub area \(page 149\)](#)



## Adding OSPF to a VR

Add OSPF to a virtual router (VR) to enable you to connect a Nortel Multiservice Switch node to customer network through the protocol port.

### Prerequisites

- If you are going to set attribute *Vr Ip Ospf spareInstance* in [step 5](#) of the procedure, first set attribute *Shelf cpEquipmentProtection* to *hot*. Be aware that setting this attribute to *hot* causes the spare CP to restart.
- After an *Ospf* component is added under *Vr Ip* component, at least one *AreaEntry* has to be added under *Vr Ip Ospf* component, as described in [Configuring an OSPF area \(page 130\)](#).

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Add an <i>Ospf</i> component as a subcomponent of the <i>Ip</i> component. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf</b>
2	Specify the IP address of the OSPF instance to identify it in the AS. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf routerId &lt;x.x.x.x&gt;</b>
3	Specify the estimated counts if you do not want to use the system defaults. Configuring the value of these attributes to accurate estimates improves performance and does not limit functionality. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf estimatedNumberOfInternalOSPFRoutes &lt;int_routes&gt;, estimatedNumberOfExternalOSPFRoutes &lt;ext_routes&gt;, estimatedNumberOfInterfacesPerArea &lt;if&gt;, estimatedNumberOfNeighborsPerInterface &lt;nbrs&gt;</b>
4	If you want to synchronize the OSPF instance maintained on the standby card, set attribute <i>Shelf cpEquipmentProtection</i> to <i>hot</i> . For more information, see NN10600-550 <i>Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Common Configuration Procedures</i> .
5	Set the spare instance attribute according to whether you want a synchronized OSPF instance maintained on the standby card. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf spareInstance &lt;sparing_action&gt;</b>
6	If required, change the default setting for the alarm generator, which specifies what OSPF alarms are generated. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf alarmGeneration &lt;alarm&gt;</b>
7	If required, change the default for the Dijkstra timer. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf spfHoldTime &lt;hold_time&gt;</b>
8	If required, change the default for the ECMP setting.



- 9**      `set Vr/<vr_name> Ip Ospf ecmpStatus <ecmp>`  
 Optionally, change the route preference attribute for OSPF internal routes.

`set Vr/<vr_name> Ip Ospf defaultOspfIntRtePref <route_pref>`
- 10**     Optionally, change the route preference attribute for OSPF external type 1 routes.

`set Vr/<vr_name> Ip Ospf defaultOspfExt1RtePref <route_pref>`
- 11**     Optionally, change the route preference attribute for OSPF external type 2 routes.

`set Vr/<vr_name> Ip Ospf defaultOspfExt2RtePref <route_pref>`
- 12**     Optionally, if you want the *Ospf* component to behave as an OSPF ASBR, change the default setting of the *AS border router status* attribute.

`set Vr/<vr_name> Ip Ospf asBdrRtrStatus true`

Also, at least one *Export* component needs to be added under *Vr Ip Ospf* component, as described in [Configuring OSPF export policy \(page 138\)](#)“.

--End--

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<alarm>	is the level of alarm generation for this instance of OSPF.
<ecmp>	is the attribute that specifies if equal cost multi-path (ECMP) is enabled for OSPF learned routes.
<ext_routes>	is the average estimated number of external routes to be exported into OSPF.
<hold_time>	is the time interval, in seconds, between OSPF Dijkstra calculations for this instance of OSPF. This is an important scaling factor during peak load times.
<ifs>	is the average estimated number of interfaces in each area of the AS.
<int_routes>	is the average estimated number of internal OSPF routes to be managed by this OSPF instance.
<nbrs>	is the average estimated number of neighbors for each OSPF interface.
(1 of 2)	

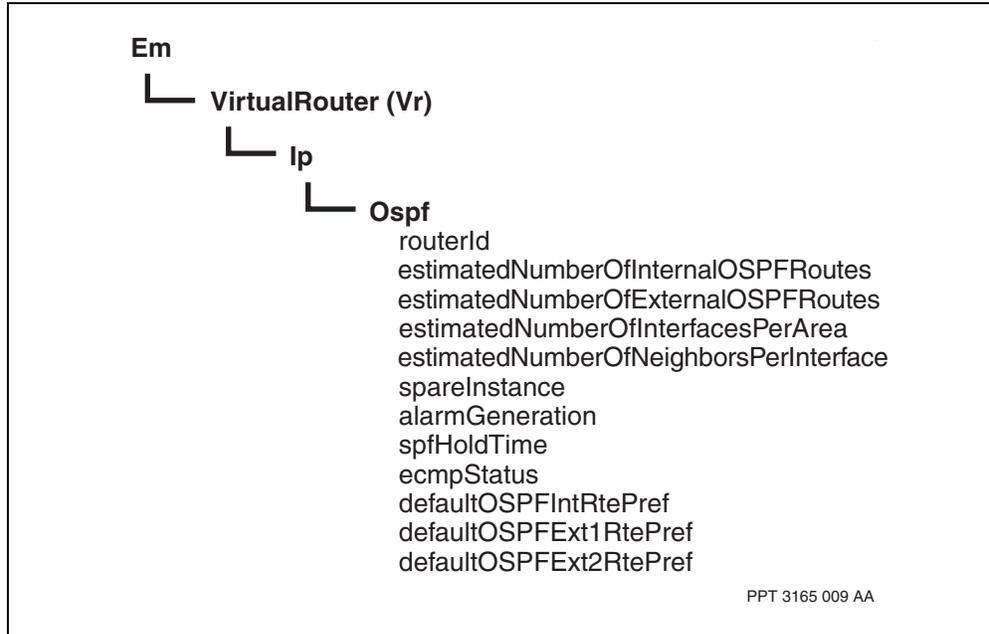


Variable	Value
<route_pref>	is the route preference. The attribute default is 30 for internal routes, 80 for external type 1 routes, and 120 for external type 2 routes.
<sparing_action>	is the spare instance setting. When set to disable, a synchronized OSPF instance is not maintained on the standby card.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.
<x.x.x.x>	is the 32-bit IP address that uniquely identifies the OSPF router in the AS.
(2 of 2)	



**Procedure job aid**

**OSPF to a VR component hierarchy**





## Configuring an OSPF area

Configure an OSPF area to specify which area the *Ospf* component is going to participate in routing.

Optionally, set the authentication type for the area to MD5, if you want to use MD5 authentication in the area's OSPF routing exchanges.

### Prerequisites

- There must be at least one *AreaEntry* provisioned under a *Vr Ip Ospf* component.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add an <i>AreaEntry</i> as a subcomponent of the <i>Ospf</i> component. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf AreaEntry/&lt;area_id&gt;</b> If this area 1 is not to be used as a transit area, set attributes <i>importAsExtern</i> and <i>areaSummary</i> appropriately as described in <a href="#">Configuring a stub area (page 149)</a> .
2	Optionally, set the authentication type for the area to MD5, if you want to use MD5 authentication in the area's OSPF routing exchanges. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf AreaEntry/&lt;area_id&gt; authType md5</b>

---

--End--

---



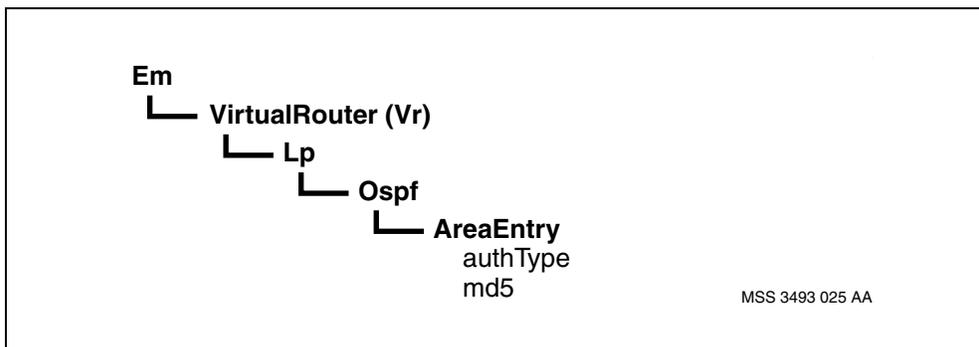
---

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<area_id>	is the OSPF area ID in the format of an IP address.
<auth_type>	is the authentication type specified for the area.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### OSPF area component hierarchy





## Configuring an OSPF interface

Configure an OSPF interface to connect the protocol port on a Nortel Multiservice Switch node to your network or its peers.

Optionally, configure MD5 authentication on an OSPF link to provide protection of OSPF neighbor relationships. Authentication for the OSPF protocol is controlled on a per interface/subnet basis. Change an MD5 key using the procedure [Changing an MD5 key on an authenticated OSPF link \(page 136\)](#).

### Prerequisites

- To participate in all OSPF area routing, it is recommended that you provision at least one OSPF interface for each OSPF area, and that you link the OSPF interface to an area.
- Configure a parent component (*ProtocolPort*) for each interface to be included in OSPF routing. See [Configuring and linking a protocol port to a media interface \(page 97\)](#).
- Configure a parent component (*LogicalIf*) for each interface to be included in OSPF routing. See [Enabling IpPort on a protocol port \(page 99\)](#).
- If you are configuring OSPF on IP logical interfaces with links to individual connections (see [Associating a single IP logical interface with a single subconnection \(page 101\)](#)), it is recommended that you do not set attribute *Vr ProtocolPort IpPort LogicalIf Ospflf ifType* to broadcast. See [step 3](#) of the procedure.
- If MD5 authentication is enabled on an *Ospflf*, it must have at least one *Keyld* component and one *md5Key* attribute provisioned.
- It is recommended that different MD5 key values be used on each *Ospflf* subnet.

---

**Attention:** As simultaneous provisioning of both the local and remote router is not possible, there will be an interim period during which the local router will have its authentication mode configured as MD5, but the remote router has not yet been configured and is therefore still operating in unauthenticated mode. During this interim period, both routers will raise authentication failure alarms, as their authentication modes do not match.

---

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	To enable OSPF on a node, add the <i>Ospflf</i> component to each IP logical interface that is taking part in the OSPF process.



- add Vr/<vr\_name> ProtocolPort/<pp\_name> IpPort LogicalIf/<ipAddress> OspfIf**
- 2 Set the *areald* attribute for the OSPF *LogicalIf* component to define the OSPF area to which the interface connects:
- set Vr/<vr\_name> ProtocolPort/<pp\_name> IpPort LogicalIf/<ipAddress> OspfIf areaId <area\_id>**
- 3 Select the OSPF interface type.
- set Vr/<vr\_name> ProtocolPort/<pp\_name> IpPort LogicalIf/<ipAddress> OspfIf ifType <if\_type>**
- 4 Optionally, configure an MD5 *KeyId* component under the *OspfIf*.
- add Vr/<vr\_name> Pp/<pp\_id> IpPort LogicalIf/<ip\_addr> OspfIf md5KeyId/<n>**
- 5 Set an MD5 key value under the *KeyId* component just added.
- set Vr/<vr\_name> Pp/<pp\_id> IpPort LogicalIf/<ip\_addr> OspfIf md5KeyId/<n> md5Key <string>**
- 6 Select the mode of operation if the interface type is point-to-multipoint.
- set Vr/<vr\_name> ProtocolPort/<pp\_name> IpPort LogicalIf/<ipAddress> OspfIf pointToMultipoint <mode\_of\_operation>**
- It is necessary to configure the neighbors for a point-to-multipoint interface in a non-broadcast network.
- 7 Add a neighbor component for each OSPF neighbor if the interface type is point-to-multipoint non-broadcast or NBMA.
- add Vr/<vr\_name> ProtocolPort/<pp\_name> IpPort LogicalIf/<ipAddress> OspfIf Neighbor/<ipAddr>**
- For broadcast networks, the OSPF neighbors are discovered automatically by the Hello protocol.
- 8 Add a *HostEntry* component to the *Ospf* component if you want to advertise a particular host address:
- add Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Ospf HostEntry/<ipAd>, <tos>**

---

--End--

---

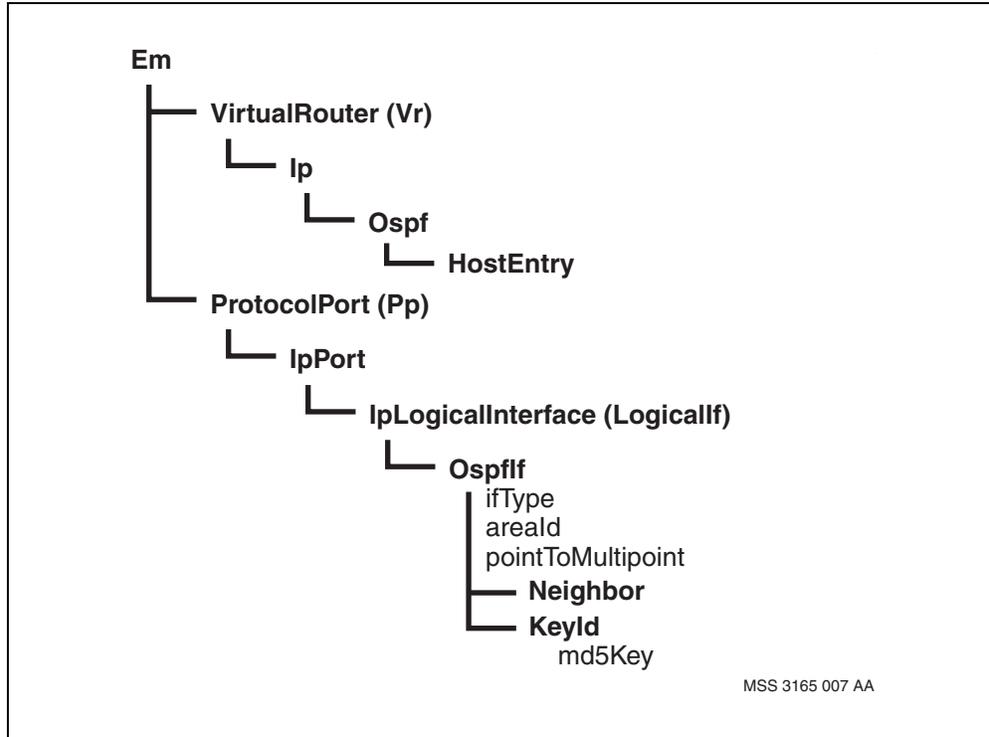


## Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<area_id>	is the 32-bit IP address for the OSPF area in which this router is located. If you do not specify the area ID, the system will assume that the port is in the backbone, area ID 0.0.0.0.
<if_type>	is the type of interface used. If you are configuring OSPF on IP logical interfaces with links to individual connections (see <a href="#">Associating a single IP logical interface with a single subconnection (page 101)</a> ), it is recommended that you do not set the attribute <i>Vr ProtocolPort IpPort LogicalIf Ospflf ifType</i> to broadcast.
<ipAd>	is the host address to be advertised.
<ipAddr>	is the 32-bit address assigned to the OSPF neighbor.
<ipAddress>	is the 32-bit IP address assigned to this logical interface.
<mode_of_operation>	is the mode of operation value. A value of non-broadcast limits the interface to sending unicast packets whereas a broadcast value enables sending multicast OSPF Hello packets to dynamically discover neighbors.
<n>	is an instance of an MD5 key associated with an OSPF Virtual interface, value of 1-255.
<pp_name>	is the name of the protocol port.
<string>	is 1-16 ASCII characters.
<tos>	specifies the ToS byte value assigned to the packet.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.



**Procedure job aid**  
**OSPF interface component hierarchy**





---

## Changing an MD5 key on an authenticated OSPF link

Transition MD5 keys without having to terminate the neighbor relationship for which the key is being changed.

### Prerequisites

- To minimize impact on performance, it is important to keep the key transition time to an absolute minimum. The key transition time is the time between configuring the new key information on the local router and configuring it on the remote router. During the key transition time, the local router will be duplicating each packet it transmits (one packet for each key).
- An old key should be deleted when it is no longer in use. Retaining only the newest key makes it obvious which key is in use. There are also performance impacts resulting from retaining the old keys, as incoming packets must be checked against all provisioned keys.

---

**Attention:** During the key transition time, the local router will be transmitting packets with both the old key and the new key. An alarm will be raised on the remote router during the key transition time as it is receiving packets authenticated with the new key, even though it has not yet been configured with that key. However, as the remote router is also receiving the same packets authenticated with the old key, the adjacency will not be lost.

---

---

**Attention:** If several obsolete keys have been retained, the user may identify which is the newest key (the key in use) by means of operational attributes.

---

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add a new key ( <i>KeyId</i> <y>) under the <i>OspfIf</i> on the local and remote router. <pre>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Pp/&lt;pp_id&gt; IpPort LogicalIf/&lt;ip_addr&gt; OspfIf KeyId/&lt;y&gt; set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Pp/&lt;pp_id&gt; IpPort LogicalIf/&lt;ip_addr&gt; OspfIf KeyId/&lt;y&gt; md5Key &lt;string&gt;</pre>
2	Remove the old key ( <i>KeyId</i> <x>) from the local and remote router. <pre>del Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Pp/&lt;pp_id&gt; IpPort LogicalIf/&lt;ip_addr&gt; OspfIf KeyId/&lt;x&gt;</pre>

---

--End--

---

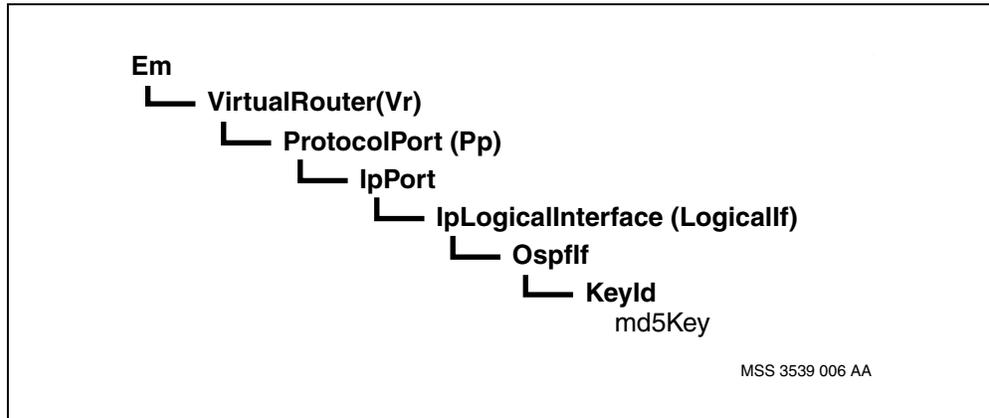


## Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<ip_addr>	is the IP address.
<pp_id>	is the Protocol Port id.
<string>	is 1-16 ASCII characters.
<x>	is the id of the old MD5 key.
<y>	is id of the new MD5 key.
<vr_name>	is the virtual router id.

## Procedure job aid

OSPF component hierarchy for changing an MD5 key on an authenticated OSPF link





## Configuring OSPF export policy

Configure OSPF export policy to define how routing information learned from other routing protocols is blocked or advertised as OSPF external routes onto the attached OSPF areas.

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Add an <i>Export</i> component to the <i>Ospf</i> component. <pre>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf Export/&lt;export_policy_number&gt;</pre>
2	Set the <i>advertiseStatus</i> attribute to enable or disable the <i>Ospf</i> Export policy. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf Export/&lt;export_policy_number&gt; advertiseStatus &lt;advertise_toggle&gt;</pre>
3	Set the <i>asBdrRtrStatus</i> attribute to enable the OSPF export policy. If you set this attribute to false, which is the default, OSPF blocks the export of all non-OSPF learned routes. If you set this attribute to true, the VR being configured will be used as OSPF ASBR. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf asBdrRtrStatus true</pre>
4	Optionally, set the <i>ripInterface</i> attribute if you want to limit the exported OSPF information to RIP routes learned from a particular RIP interface. This attribute can only be non zero when the protocol is set to RIP. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf Export/&lt;export_policy_number&gt; ripInterface &lt;ipAddress&gt;</pre>
5	Set the <i>protocol</i> attribute if you want to specify which routing protocol networks are advertised by this policy. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf Export/&lt;export_policy_number&gt; protocol &lt;protocol_type&gt;</pre> <p>If you provision the <i>ripInterface</i> attribute (see <a href="#">step 4</a>), you must set the <i>protocol</i> attribute to all or rip.</p>
6	If you want to export bgpInternal routes and you set the <i>protocol</i> attribute to all in <a href="#">step 5</a> , set the <i>redistributeIbgp</i> attribute as follows. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf redistributeIbgp true</pre> <p>If you set the <i>protocol</i> attribute to bgpInternal in <a href="#">step 5</a>, you do not need to set the <i>redistributeIbgp</i> attribute.</p>
7	Set the <i>ripNeighbor</i> attribute if you want to limit the exported OSPF information to a specific RIP neighbor. This attribute can only be non zero when the protocol is set to RIP. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf Export/&lt;export_policy_number&gt; ripNeighbor &lt;ipAddr&gt;</pre>



- 8 Set the *metric* attribute if you want to change the default cost metrics for exported routes.  
**set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Ospf Export/<export\_policy\_number> metric <cost>**
- 9 Add a *NetworkList* <ipaddress> <ipmask> component if you want to advertise the information defined in this policy about those networks and subnetworks contained in the *NetworkList* component.  
**add Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Ospf Export/<export\_policy\_number> NetworkList/<net\_instance>**
- 10 Configure the *NetworkList* <ipaddress> <ipmask> component.  
**set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Ospf Export/<export\_policy\_number> NetworkList/<net\_instance> ipaddress <ipAd>, ipmask <ip\_mask>**
- 11 Set the *egpAsId* attribute if you want to limit the EGP routes to a specific AS.  
**set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Ospf Export/<export\_policy\_number> egpAsId <as\_id>**

--End--

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<advertise_toggle>	'is set to send (enable) or blocked (disable).
<as_id>	is the autonomous system number of the network routing from which the EGP route was learned.
<cost>	is the OSPF cost that is attached to exported routes.
<export_policy_number>	is the numeric designation assigned to this export policy.
<ipAd>	is the network or subnetwork address of the network.
<ipAddr>	is the 32-bit IP address of the specific router to which the information defined in this policy is advertised.
<ipAddress>	is the local IP address of the RIP interface.
<ip_mask>	is the subnet mask used by the network.
<net_instance>	is the numeric designation assigned to this instance of the <i>NetworkList</i> component.

(1 of 2)

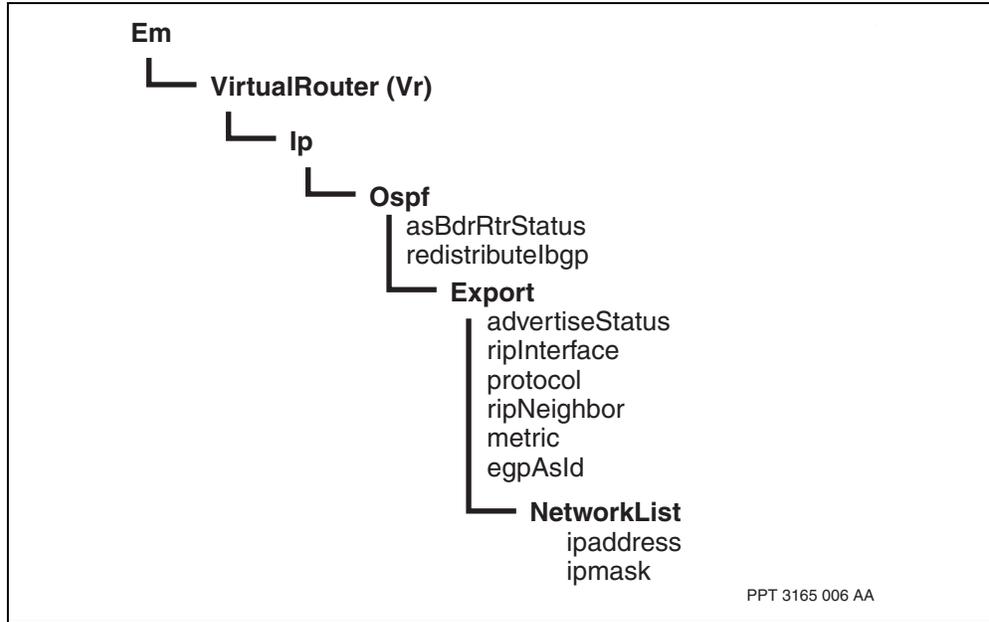


Variable	Value
<protocol_type>	<p>is the protocol type.</p> <p>If you set the <i>protocol</i> attribute to all, the export policy applies to all routes in the forwarding table except bgpInternal and bgpExternal.</p> <p>If you want to export bgpInternal routes, create an export policy with the <i>protocol</i> attribute set to bgpInternal, or see <a href="#">step 6</a>.</p> <p>If you want to export bgpExternal routes, create an export policy with the <i>protocol</i> attribute set to bgpExternal.</p>
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

(2 of 2)



**Procedure job aid**  
**OSPF export policy component hierarchy**





## Configuring OSPF virtual links

Configure a virtual link to connect an isolated area, through another transit area, to the backbone.

Optionally, configure MD5 authentication on an OSPF virtual link to provide protection of OSPF neighbor relationships. Change an MD5 key by using the procedure [Changing an MD5 key on an authenticated OSPF virtual link \(page 145\)](#).

### Prerequisites

- If MD5 authentication is enabled for an *Ospf virtIfEntry*, it must have at least one *KeyId* component and one *md5Key* attribute provisioned.
- It is recommended that different MD5 key values be used on each virtual link.

---

**Attention:** As simultaneous provisioning of both the local and remote router is not possible, there will be an interim period during which the local router will have its authentication mode configured as MD5, but the remote router has not yet been configured and is therefore still operating in unauthenticated mode. During this interim period, both routers will raise authentication failure alarms, as their authentication modes do not match.

---

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Add a <i>VirtIfEntry</i> subcomponent under the <i>Ospf</i> subcomponent. <pre>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf VirtIfEntry/ &lt;localAreaIdIpAddress&gt;, &lt;nbrRouterIdIpAddress&gt;</pre>
2	Optionally, change the frequency of the OSPF hello protocol exchange interval. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf VirtIfEntry/ &lt;localAreaIdIpAddress&gt;, &lt;nbrRouterIdIpAddress&gt; helloInterval &lt;interval&gt;</pre>
3	Optionally, configure the OSPF simple authentication key if you want to provide a higher level of security to OSPF routing exchanges. <pre>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf VirtIfEntry/ &lt;localAreaIdIpAddress&gt;, &lt;nbrRouterIdIpAddress&gt; authKey &lt;authentication_string&gt;</pre>
4	Optionally, Configure an MD5 <i>KeyId</i> component under the <i>virtIfEntry</i> . <pre>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf virtIfEntry/&lt;virtif_id&gt; md5KeyId/&lt;n&gt;</pre>



- 5 Set an MD5 key value under the MD5 *Key/d* component just added.

```
set Vr/<vr_name> Ip Ospf virtIfEntry/<virtif_id>  
md5KeyId/<n> md5Key <string>
```

---

--End--

---

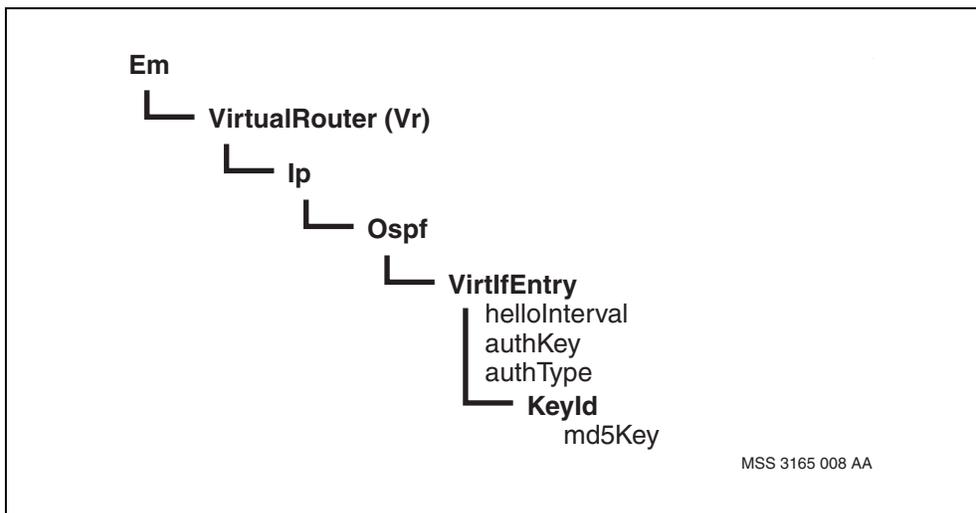


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<authentication_string>	is a hexadecimal string of 1 to 8 bytes (Hex representation of ASCII character set, actually 16 Hex digits). Ensure that it matches the <i>authenticationkey</i> attribute currently in use in the area, otherwise routing exchanges are discarded.
<interval>	is the value of the hello exchange interval. You can choose to adjust the interval depending upon the media bandwidth and traffic conditions. All routers on that media must use the same hello interval.
<localAreaIdIpAddress>	is the OSPF area ID of the local end of the virtual link.
<n>	is an instance of an <i>md5Key</i> associated with an OSPF Interface or an OSPF Virtual interface, value of 1-255.
<nbrRouterIdIpAddress>	is the OSPF Router ID of the remote end of the virtual link.
<string>	is 1-16 ASCII characters.
<virtif_id>	is the <i>VirtIfEntry</i> id.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### OSPF virtual links component hierarchy





## Changing an MD5 key on an authenticated OSPF virtual link

Transition MD5 keys without having to terminate the neighbor relationship for which the key is being changed.

### Prerequisites

- To minimize impact on performance, it is important to keep the key transition time to an absolute minimum. The key transition time is defined as the time between configuring the new key information on the local router and configuring it on the remote router. During the key transition time, the local router will be duplicating each packet it transmits (one packet for each key).
- An old key should be deleted when it is no longer in use. Retaining only the newest key makes it obvious which key is in use. There are also performance impacts resulting from retaining the old keys, as incoming packets must be checked against all provisioned keys.

---

**Attention:** During the key transition time, the local router will be transmitting packets with both the old key and the new key. An alarm will be raised on the remote router during the key transition time as it is receiving packets authenticated with the new key, even though it has not yet been configured with that key. However, as the remote router is also receiving the same packets authenticated with the old key, the adjacency will not be lost.

---

---

**Attention:** If several obsolete keys have been retained, the user may identify which is the newest key (the key in use) by means of operational attributes.

---

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Add a new key ( <i>KeyId</i> <y>) under the <i>virtIfEntry</i> on the local router. <pre>add Vr/&lt;vr_id&gt; Ip Ospf virtIfEntry/&lt;virtif_id&gt; KeyId/&lt;y&gt; set Vr/&lt;vr_id&gt; Ip Ospf virtIfEntry/&lt;virtif_id&gt; KeyId/&lt;y&gt; md5Key &lt;string&gt;</pre>
2	Add the new key to the remote router. <pre>add Vr/&lt;vr_id&gt; Ospf virtIfEntry/&lt;virtif_id&gt; KeyId/&lt;y&gt; set Vr/&lt;vr_id&gt; Ip Ospf virtIfEntry/&lt;virtif_id&gt; KeyId/&lt;y&gt; md5Key &lt;string&gt;</pre>
3	Remove the old key ( <i>KeyId</i> <x>) from the local router. <pre>del Vr/&lt;vr_id&gt; Ip Ospf virtIfEntry/&lt;virtif_id&gt; KeyId/&lt;y&gt;</pre>



- 4 Remove the old key (*KeyId* <x>) from the remote router.

```
del Vr/<vr_id> Ip Ospf virtIfEntry/<virtif_id> KeyId/<y>
```

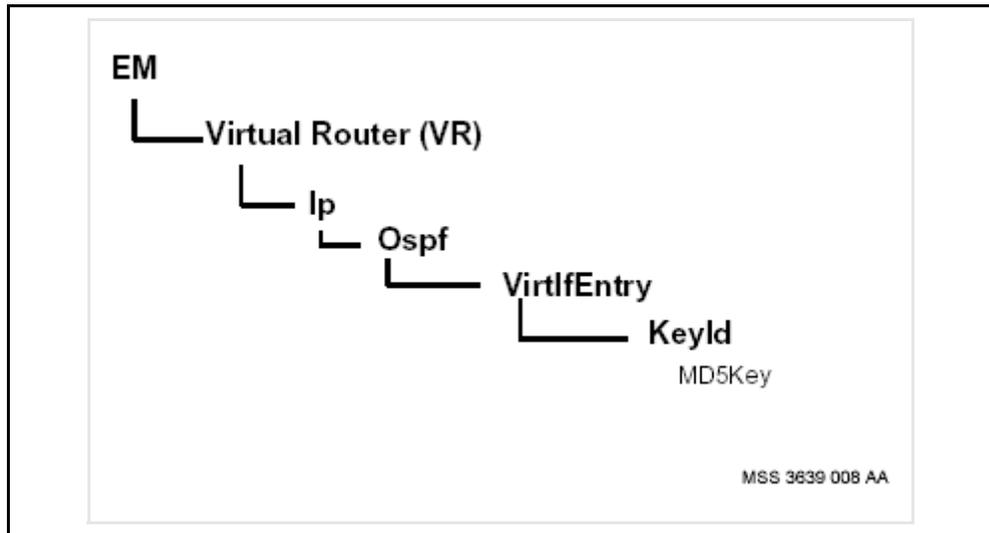
--End--

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<string>	is 1-16 characters.
<x>	is the id of the old key.
<y>	is the id of the new key.
<vr_id>	is the virtual router id.
<virtif_id>	is the Virtual Entry id.

### Procedure job aid

OSPF component hierarchy for changing an MD5 key on an authenticated virtual OSPF link





## Configuring an aggregate policy

Configure an aggregate policy to reduce the number of LSAs summarized from one area and generated into another area.

### Prerequisites

- If the *AreaAggregateEntry* component is provisioned for a NSSA, the *importAsExtern* of the valid *AreaEntry* has to be set to *importNssa*.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add an <i>AreaAggregateEntry</i> as a subcomponent of the <i>Ospf</i> component. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf AreaAggregateEntry/ &lt;area_id&gt;,&lt;lsdb_type&gt;,&lt;aggregate_net&gt;,&lt;aggregate_mask&gt;</b>  The <i>AreaAggregateEntry</i> address must have the same area ID as the <i>AreaEntry</i> component that already exists. See <a href="#">Configuring an OSPF area (page 130)</a> .
2	Set aggregate policy effect attribute. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf AreaAggregateEntry/ &lt;area_id&gt;,&lt;lsdb_type&gt;,&lt;aggregate_net&gt;,&lt;aggregate_mask&gt; effect &lt;advertise_decision&gt;</b>

---

--End--

---

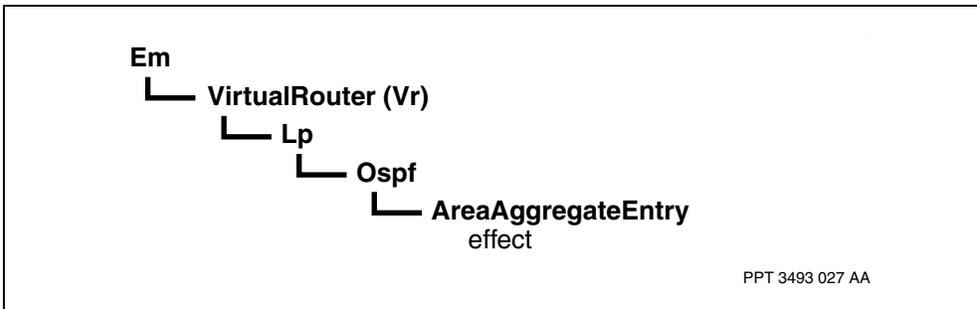


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<advertise_decision>	is the value indicating whether to advertise matching routing information or not.
<aggregate_mask>	is the network or subnet mask in the form of IP address that the aggregate policy represents.
<aggregate_net>	is the network or subnet range in the form of IP address that the aggregate policy represents.
<area_id>	is the OSPF area ID in the format of an IP address.
<lsdb_type>	is the type of the LSAs that the aggregate policy represents.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### Aggregate policy component hierarchy





## Configuring a stub area

Configure a stub area to reduce the number of link state advertisements (LSAs) received from outside of the area. It helps reduce the memory requirements for the stub area's internal routers.

### Prerequisites

- The attribute *importAsExtern* of the valid *AreaEntry* has to be set to a value other than *importExternal*.

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Add a <i>StubAreaEntry</i> as a subcomponent of the <i>Ospf</i> component. <pre>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf StubAreaEntry/&lt;area_id&gt;,&lt;tos&gt;</pre> <p>The <i>StubAreaEntry</i> address must have the same area ID as the <i>AreaEntry</i> component that already exists. See <a href="#">Configuring an OSPF area (page 130)</a>.</p>
2	Set the <i>importAsExtern</i> attribute. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf AreaEntry/&lt;area_id&gt; importAsExtern &lt;import_extern&gt;</pre>
3	Set the <i>areaSummary</i> attribute. <pre>Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf AreaEntry/&lt;area_id&gt; areaSummary &lt;area_summary&gt;</pre>
4	Set the <i>metricType</i> attribute. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf StubAreaEntry/&lt;area_id&gt;,&lt;tos&gt; metricType &lt;metric_type&gt;</pre> <p>The attribute <i>metric_type</i> must be set to <i>ospfMetric</i> if and only the attribute <i>import_extern</i> for the corresponding <i>AreaEntry</i> is set to <i>importNoExternal</i>.</p>
5	Set the stub area metric if you want to change the default metric value advertised in the default LSAs. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf StubAreaEntry/&lt;area_id&gt;,&lt;tos&gt; metric &lt;metric_value&gt;</pre>
6	Change the <i>advertiseDefault</i> attribute if you want to advertise the default routing information or not. <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf StubAreaEntry/&lt;area_id&gt;,&lt;tos&gt; advertiseDefault &lt;advertise_decision&gt;</pre>

--End--

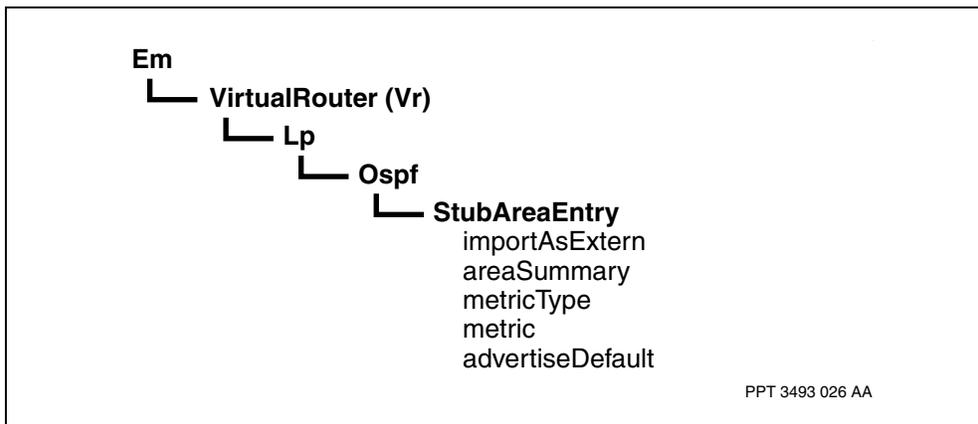


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<advertise_decision>	is the value indicating whether to advertise default LSAs or not.
<area_summary>	is the value that controls the import of summary LSAs into stub areas. If you want to configure a stub area, set this attribute to <i>noAreaSummary</i> . If you want to configure a summary stub area, set this attribute to <i>sendAreaSummary</i> .
<area_id>	is the OSPF area ID in the format of an IP address.
<import_extern>	is the type of service associated with the metric. If you want to configure a stub area, set this attribute to <i>importNoExternal</i> . If you want to configure a not-so-stubby-area (NSSA), set this attribute to <i>importNssa</i> .
<metric_type>	is the metric type to be advertised in default LSAs.
<metric_value>	is the metric value to be advertised in default LSAs.
<tos>	is the type of service associated with the metric.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### Stub area component hierarchy





---

## VR BGP-4 configuration

---

Configure the virtual router (VR) border gateway protocol 4 (BGP-4) to exchange routing information within a network or between networks using BGP-4, or to populate OSPF or RIP information through an IP tunnel.

### Prerequisites to VR BGP-4 configuration

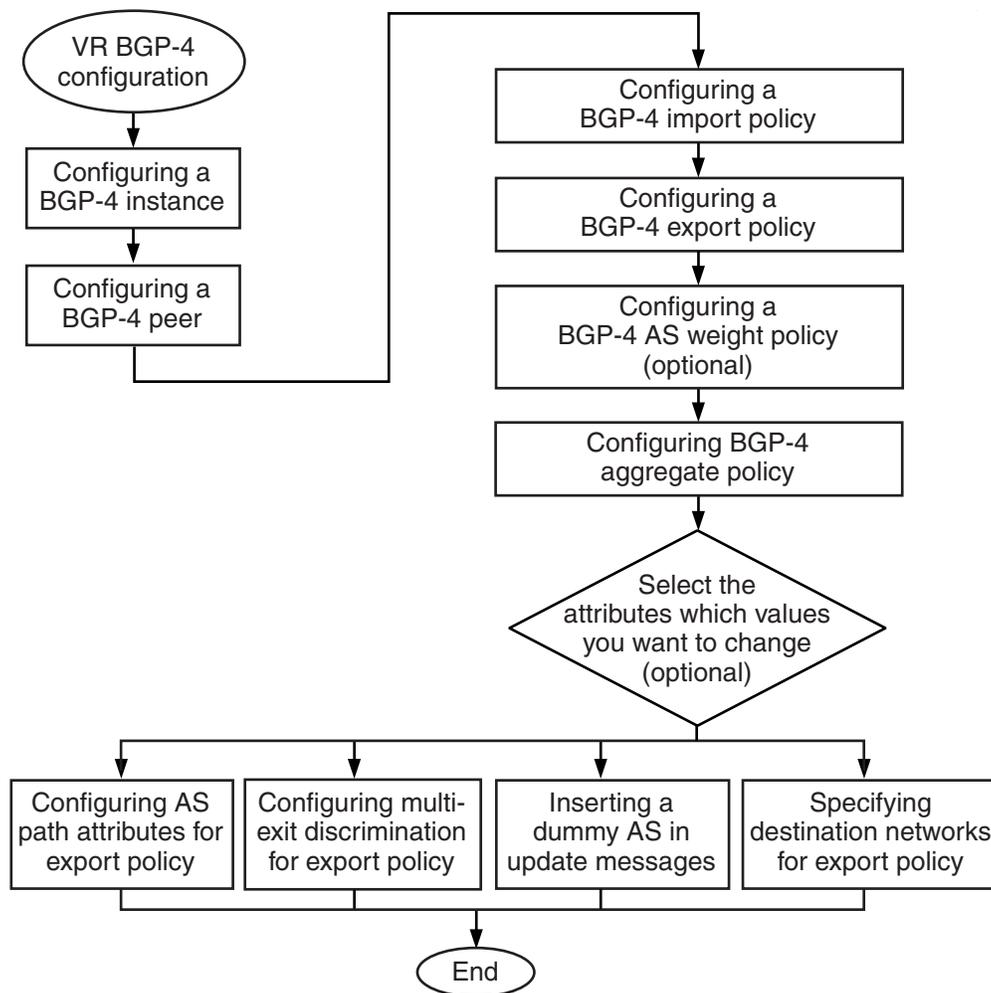
- Install a PM2 function processor and CP2 control processor in Nortel Multiservice Switch nodes. Multiservice Switch nodes support BGP-4 on these cards only. For more information about function processors, see NN10600-551 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 FP Configuration Reference*. For more information about control processors, see NN10600-170 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400 Hardware Description* and NN10600-120 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 15000/20000 Hardware Description*.
- Configure one VR for each BGP-4 instance that you intend to configure. You can create only one BGP-4 instance for each VR on the node. See [Adding a virtual router \(page 91\)](#).

### VR BGP-4 configuration procedures

This task flow shows you the sequence of procedures you perform to configure BGP-4. To link to any procedure, go to [VR BGP-4 configuration procedure navigation \(page 152\)](#).



### VR BGP-4 configuration procedures



MSS 3493 004 AA

### VR BGP-4 configuration procedure navigation

- [Configuring a BGP-4 instance \(page 154\)](#)
- [Configuring a BGP-4 peer \(page 156\)](#)
- [Configuring BGP-4 import policy \(page 162\)](#)
- [Configuring BGP-4 export policy \(page 167\)](#)
- [Configuring BGP-4 AS weight policy \(page 171\)](#)
- [Configuring BGP-4 aggregate policy \(page 172\)](#)
- [Configuring AS path attributes for export policy \(page 175\)](#)
- [Configuring multi-exit discrimination for export policy \(page 177\)](#)



- [Inserting a dummy AS in update messages \(page 178\)](#)
- [Specifying destination networks for export policy \(page 179\)](#)



## Configuring a BGP-4 instance

Configure a BGP-4 instance if you need to use BGP-4 to communicate between the Nortel Multiservice Switch node and your network, or to populate OSPF or RIP information through an IP tunnel.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Create an instance of the BGP-4 protocol. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp</b>
2	Specify the autonomous system (AS) number of the BGP-4 instance. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp localAs &lt;asNo&gt;</b>
3	Specify the router identifier for the BGP-4 instance. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp bgpIdentifier &lt;ipAddress&gt;</b>
4	Specify the local preference for routes received from external peers, if you do not want to use the default value. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp locPrf &lt;loc_pref&gt;</b>
5	Specify the MED value for routes sent to external peers, if you do not want to use the default value. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp med &lt;metric&gt;</b>
6	Configure BGP-4 as a route reflector within the AS, if you do not want to use the default value.  The default cluster identifier, as specified in the <i>routeReflectorCluster</i> attribute, has the same IP address as the router ID. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp rr &lt;true_false&gt;</b>
7	If required, change the default for the alarm generator, which specifies what BGP alarms are generated. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp alarmGeneration &lt;alarm&gt;</b>

---

--End--

---

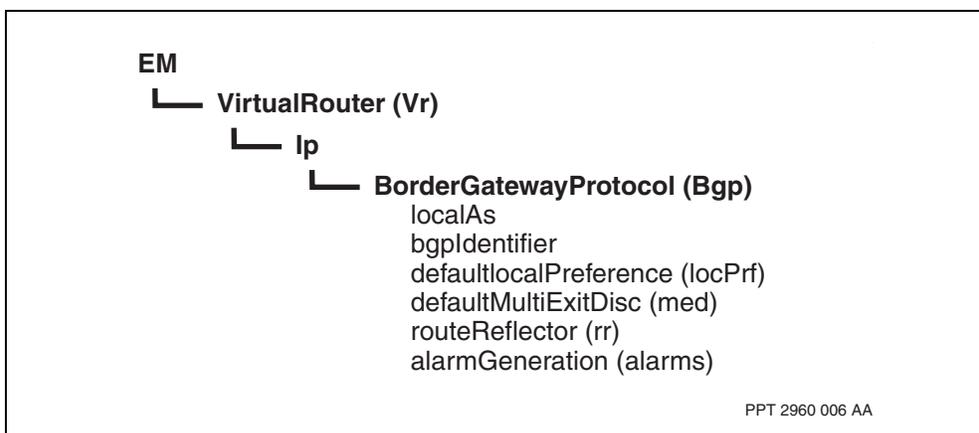


## Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<alarm>	is the level of alarm generation for this instance of BGP.
<asNo>	is the autonomous system (AS) to which the BGP-4 instance belongs.
<ipAddress>	is the 32-bit IP address that identifies the BGP-4 router.
<loc_pref>	is the local preference.
<metric>	is the MED value.
<true_false>	specifies whether the BGP-4 instance behaves as a route reflector within the AS.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

## Procedure job aid

### BGP-4 instance component hierarchy





## Configuring a BGP-4 peer

Configure BGP-4 peers to exchange routing information about reachable destinations in different autonomous systems (AS). The BGP-4 peers use this routing information to construct a map of AS connectivity that allows them to eliminate routing loops and enforce policy decisions at the AS level.

Optionally, configure MD5 authentication on a BGP peer connection to provide protection of BGP neighbor relationships. Change an MD5 key on an authenticated BGP peer using the procedure [Changing an MD5 key on an authenticated BGP-4 peer \(page 160\)](#).

### Prerequisites

- If configuring MD5 authentication, it is recommended that different MD5 key values be used for each BGP-4 peer.

---

**Attention:** A longer MD5 key will be more difficult to break, however, the longer the key used, the greater the impact on performance. A key length of between 12 and 24 characters should be sufficiently secure without having too great an impact on performance.

---

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Create an instance of a BGP-4 peer under the BGP-4 instance. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Peer/&lt;peer&gt;</b> The component <i>Vr Ip Bgp Peer Desc</i> is automatically created.
2	Specify the AS number for the BGP-4 peer. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Peer/&lt;peer&gt; Desc peerAs &lt;asNo&gt;</b>
3	Specify the local IP address for the BGP-4 peer. If you set the <i>localAddressConfigured</i> attribute as the local IP address used for BGP peering, you can use either a physical interface address or a virtual interface address (for example, an always-up IP address). In the case of EBGP peering with the <i>multiHopEbgp</i> attribute disabled, you must use the address of the directly connected interface to ensure proper exchange of routing information. If you are using an always-up IP interface, the local IP address of the BGP-4 peer must match the IP address of the virtual router associated virtual media logical interface. If you are using an always-up interface, make sure the <i>Vm If mode</i> attribute is set to <i>alwaysUpInterface</i> . See <a href="#">Virtual media configuration (page 233)</a> . <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Peer/&lt;peer&gt; Desc lac &lt;lac_addr&gt;</b>



- 4 Specify the frequency of keep alive message retransmissions from the BGP-4 peer.  
**set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp Peer/<peer> Desc kac <kac\_timer>**
- 5 Specify the maximum length of time between BGP-4 keep alive messages from the BGP-4 peer before the BGP-4 instance considers the connection down.  
**set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp Peer/<peer> Desc htc <htc\_timer>**
- 6 Specify the minimum length of time TCP waits before re-attempting to establish a BGP-4 connection.  
**set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp Peer/<peer> Desc connectRetry <con\_tmr>**
- 7 Specify the minimum length of time the BGP-4 peer waits before sending route updates to a neighbor AS.  
**set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp Peer/<peer> Desc minAsOrig <orig\_tmr>**
- 8 Specify the length of time after which BGP-4 can re-advertise route information to peers in other ASs.  
**set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp Peer/<peer> Desc minRouteAdv <adv\_tmr>**  
BGP-4 ignores the *minAsOrigTime* and *minRouteAdvTime* attributes for routes that are withdrawn.
- 9 Specify whether the BGP-4 peer is a route reflector client.  
**set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp peer/<peer> Desc isRrClient <true\_false>**
- 10 Enable dynamic default aggregation (DDA) for routes learned from the EBGp peer if you want to prioritize dynamic default routes.  
**set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp Peer/<peer> Desc diaMed <metric>**
- 11 Specify whether the private AS number is removed from the AS path attribute of routes sent to the EBGp peer.  
**set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp Peer/<peer> Desc remPrivate <rem\_priv>**
- 12 Advertise the route availability to the BGP-4 peer.  
**set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp Peer/<peer> Desc nhs <nhs>**
- 13 Enable the multihop EBGp route distribution on a peer if you want to allow the distribution of routes across multiple hops between BGP peers that belong to different autonomous systems (AS).  
**set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp Peer/<peer> Desc multiHopEbgp <multihop\_ebgp>**
- 14 Optionally, enable MD5 authentication by setting the MD5 key value under the peer's *Descriptor*.



```
set Vr/<vr_id> Ip Bgp Peer/<ip_addr> Desc md5Key  
<ASCII_string>
```

--End--

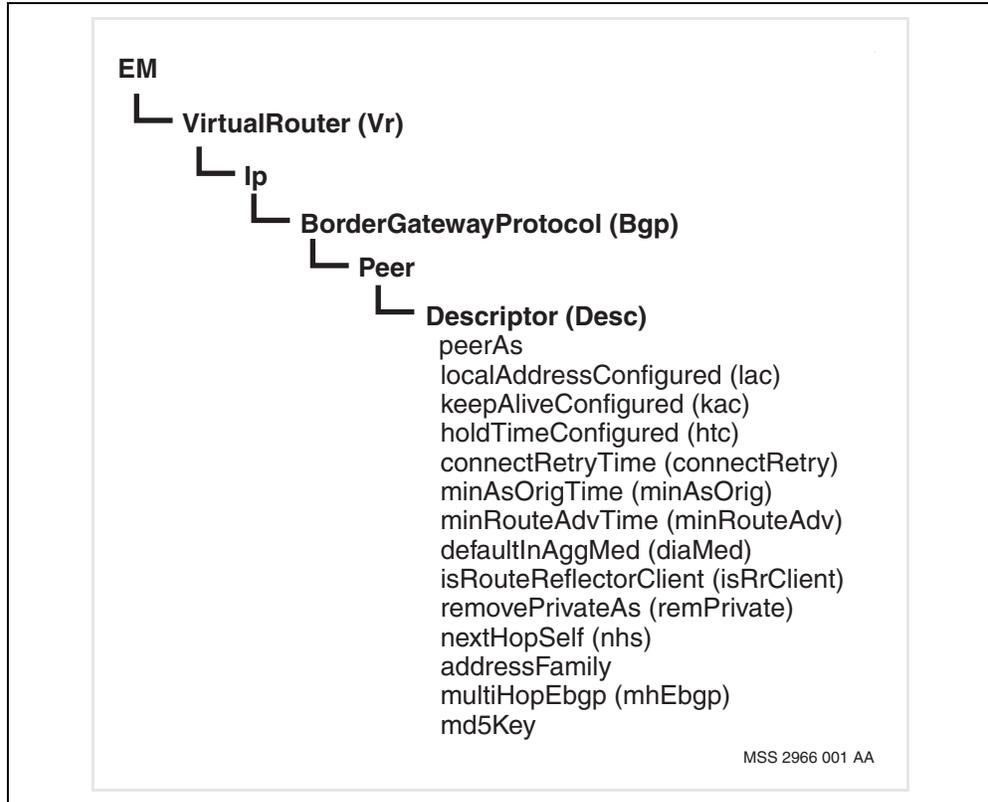
## Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<adv_tmr>	is the time interval in seconds.
<ASCII_string>	is 1-255 ASCII characters.
<asNo>	is the AS to which the BGP-4 peer belongs.
<con_tmr>	is the time interval in seconds.
<htc_timer>	is the time interval in seconds.
<kac_timer>	is the time interval in seconds. When you set this attribute to 0, BGP-4 does not send keep alive messages.
<lac_addr>	is the local IP address for this BGP-4 peer connection.
<metric>	is the MED path attribute value assigned to the DDA route. Specifying a MED metric other than the default value enables DDA for the BGP-4 peer. BGP-4 sets the MED path attribute of the default route to the value you configure in the <i>defaultInAggMed (diaMed)</i> attribute.
<multihop_ebgp>	is identifying whether the multihop EBGp route distribution capability is disabled or enabled on a EBGp peer. If the <i>multiHopEbgp</i> attribute is enabled, then the <i>localAs</i> attribute and <i>peerAs</i> attribute cannot be the same.
<nhs>	indicates if the next-hop-self is enabled or disabled when a route is sent to the peer. For details on the syntax for this attribute, see NN10600-060 <i>Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Component Reference</i> .
<orig_tmr>	is the time interval in seconds.
<peer>	is the IP address of the BGP-4 peer. To use an always-up IP interface, the IP address of the BGP-4 peer must be the same as the associated virtual media logical interface. See <a href="#">Configuring an always-up interface (page 237)</a> .
<rem_priv>	indicates whether the private AS number removal is enabled or disabled when the route is advertised to another AS.
<>true_false>	specifies whether the BGP-4 peer is a route reflector client. You must configure the BGP-4 instance as a route reflector if you set the <i>isRouteReflectorClient</i> attribute to true.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.



## Procedure job aid

### BGP-4 peer component hierarchy





---

## Changing an MD5 key on an authenticated BGP-4 peer

Transition MD5 keys without having to terminate the BGP-4 neighbor session for which the key is being changed.

### Prerequisites

- It is recommended that different MD5 key values be used for each BGP-4 peer.
- When changing keys on a BGP session between a Multiservice Switch node and a non-Multiservice Switch, the key should be changed on the Multiservice Switch node, to minimize the shortage time.

---

**Attention:** A longer MD5 key will be more difficult to break, however, the longer the key used, the greater the impact on performance. A key length of between 12 and 24 characters should be sufficiently secure without having too great an impact on performance.

---

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Set the <i>keyTransitionDelay</i> attribute on the local and remote router, for all BGP peers.  <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_id&gt; Ip Bgp keyTransitionDelay &lt;n&gt;</code>
2	Alternatively, set the <i>keyTransitionDelay</i> attribute on the local and remote routers, for a specific peer's <i>Descriptor</i> .  <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_id&gt; Ip Bgp Peer/&lt;ip_addr&gt; Desc keyTransitionDelay &lt;n&gt;</code>
3	Set the new MD5 key value on the local and remote router.  <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_id&gt; Ip Bgp Peer/&lt;ip_addr&gt; Desc md5Key &lt;ASCII_string&gt;</code>

---

--End--

---

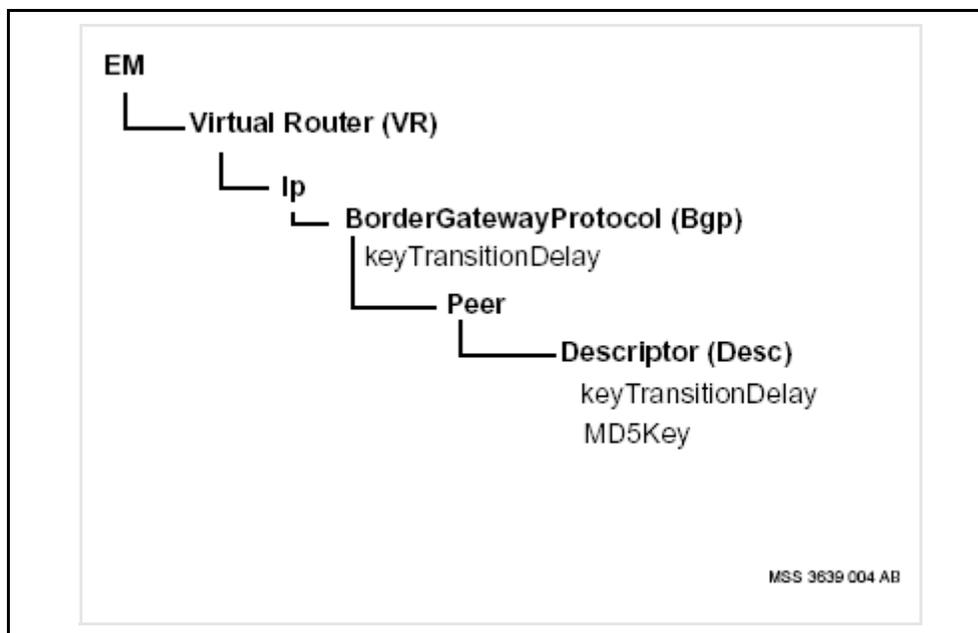


## Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<ASCII_string>	is 1-255 ASCII characters.
<ip_addr>	is the IP address.
<n>	is the amount of time the operator has to provision both the local and remote ends with the new key, without losing service. for the <i>Bgp</i> component, the value is 1 to 20160 (minutes), default is 10 minutes. for the <i>Descriptor</i> component, the value is “sameAsBgp, 1 to 20160 (minutes)”, default is “sameAsBgp”.
<vr_id>	is the virtual router id.

## Procedure job aid

### BGP-4 component hierarchy for changing an MD5 key





## Configuring BGP-4 import policy

Configure BGP-4 import policy to specify what routing information BGP-4 allows into or blocks from the IP routing database. Nortel Multiservice Switch node BGP-4 import policies can be customized through configurable attributes.

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Create an instance of an import policy. The instance number only identifies the policy and is not related to policy preference. <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Import/&lt;im_plcy&gt;</code>
2	Specify the AS number of the BGP-4 peer from which routes are learned. <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Import/&lt;im_plcy&gt; peerAs &lt;asNo&gt;</code>
3	Specify the IP address of the BGP-4 peer from which routes are learned. <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Import/&lt;im_plcy&gt; peerIpAddress &lt;addr&gt;</code>
4	Specify the AS that originated the routes learned over the BGP-4 peer. <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Import/&lt;im_plcy&gt; originAs &lt;or_asNo&gt;</code>
5	Specify a regular expression that identifies AS paths from which BGP-4 accepts route updates if you do not want to use the default value. <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Import/&lt;im_plcy&gt; asExpr &lt;path_expr&gt;</code>
6	Specify a regular expression that identifies community paths from which BGP-4 accepts route updates if you do not want to use a default value. <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Import/&lt;im_plcy&gt; comExpr &lt;com_expr&gt;</code>
7	If you have configured an AS path and community path expression for the import policy, specify a preference for the policy. <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Import/&lt;im_plcy&gt; exprPref &lt;pref&gt;</code> When the expression attributes of two import policies match the same AS or community, BGP-4 uses the preference metric to select a preferred policy. A higher value indicates a higher preference.
8	Specify the protocol that originated the routes learned over the BGP-4 peer. <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Import/&lt;im_plcy&gt; originProtocol &lt;protocol&gt;</code>
9	Specify whether BGP-4 uses or ignores information in routing updates if it meets the criteria specified in the policy:



- 
- set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp Import/<im\_plcy> usage <flag>**
- 10 If required, change the route preference attribute *defaultIbgpRtePref* for BGP internal routes.
- set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp defaultIbgpRtePref <ibgp\_route\_pref>**
- 11 If required, override the route preference by changing attribute *ibgpRtePref* for BGP internal routes.
- set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp Import/<im\_plcy> ibgpRtePreference <ibgp\_override>**
- 12 If required, change the route preference attribute *defaultEbgpRtePref* for BGP external routes.
- set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp defaultEbgpRtePref <ebgp\_route\_pref>**
- 13 If required, override the route preference by changing attribute *ebgpRtePref* for BGP external routes.
- set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp Import/<im\_plcy> ebgpRtePreference <override>**
- 14 Specify a preference for routes that match the import policy:
- set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp Import/<im\_plcy> locPrf <loc\_pref>**
- If you do not set this value, BGP-4 applies the local preference configured under the BGP-4 instance in the *defaultLocalPreference* attribute to routes that meet the import policy criteria.
- 15 Specify the community number that BGP-4 inserts in the community path attribute for routes that match the criteria of this import policy.
- set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp Import/<im\_plcy> appCom <com\_no>**
- 16 Specify a destination network for this BGP-4 import policy if you want to restrict the destination networks.
- add Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp Import/<imp\_plcy> Net/<net\_no>**
- You must create an instance of the *Network (Net)* subcomponent for each destination network associated with the import policy. If you do not specify any destination networks, BGP-4 applies the import policy to all networks.
- 17 Specify the network prefix for the destination network associated with this BGP-4 import policy.
- set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp Import/<im\_plcy> Net/<net\_no> prefix <prefix>**
- 18 Specify the network prefix length for the destination network associated with this BGP-4 import policy.
- set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Bgp Import/<imp\_plcy> Net/<net\_no> length <length>**



- 19** Specify the address family of the import policy.

```
set Vr/<vr_name> Ip Bgp Import/<im_plcy> addressFamily  
<address_family> ipv4Unicast
```

MBGP uses the same import BGP policy at the VCG level as BGP. For information about MBGP, see the chapter “Configuring multi-protocol BGP,” in NN10600-803 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP VPN Configuration Management*.

---

**--End--**

---



## Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<addr>	is the IP address of the BGP-4 peer. If you set this value to 0.0.0.0, the policy matches any IP address.
<address_family>	defines the multi-protocol extension address family of the routes to which the policy applies. The addressFamily attribute is used to distinguish the policy for MBGP applications compared to BGP applications. A policy may be selected to apply only to MBGP (mbgpVpn), only to BGP (ipv4Unicast), or both. The default is both.
<asNo>	is the AS to which the BGP-4 peer belongs. If you set this value to 0, the policy matches any AS number.
<com_expr>	a regular expression identifying community paths to match.
<com_no>	is the community number added to the community path attribute.
<ebgp_override>	is the override route preference.  Attribute default is sameAsBgp, which means use the value of attribute <i>defaultEbgpRtePref</i> for the route preference.  To prefer BGP external routes over OSPF internal routes, the recommended setting for <i>ebgpRtePreference</i> is 6.
<ebgp_route_pref>	is the route preference.
<flag>	indicates whether BGP-4 uses or ignores received routing updates.
<ibgp_override>	is the override route preference.  Attribute default is sameAsBgp, which means use the value of attribute <i>defaultIbgpRtePref</i> for the route preference.  To prefer BGP internal routes over OSPF internal routes, the recommended setting for <i>ibgpRtePreference</i> is 6.
<ibgp_route_pref>	is the route preference.
<im_plcy>	is the instance number of the import policy.
<length>	specifies the length of the network prefix.
<loc_pref>	is the relative preference for routes that match the import policy's criteria
<net_no>	identifies the destination network associated with the import policy.
<or_asNo>	is the number of the AS that originated the learned routes. If you set this value to 0, the policy matches any AS number.
<path_expr>	a regular expression identifying AS paths to match.

(1 of 2)

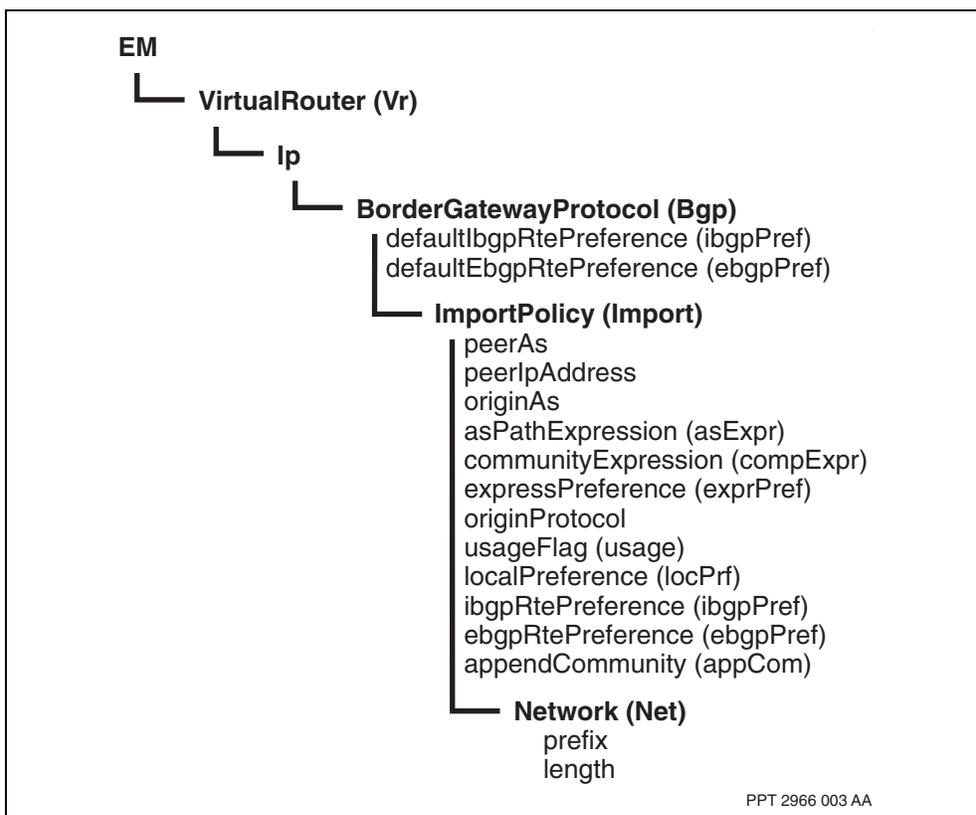


Variable	Value
<pref>	is the relative preference of a path-based policy.
<prefix>	is the network prefix, in the form of an IP address.
<protocol>	identifies the protocol that originated the routes.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

(2 of 2)

### Procedure job aid

#### BGP-4 import policy component hierarchy





## Configuring BGP-4 export policy

Configure BGP-4 export policy to specify what IP routing information BGP-4 distributes to other BGP-4 peers. This is also the only way to allow routing information from other protocols to be distributed into BGP-4. Nortel Multiservice Switch node BGP-4 export policies can be customized through configurable attributes.

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Create an instance of an export policy. The instance number only identifies the policy and is not related to policy preference. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Export/&lt;ex_plcy&gt;</b>
2	Specify the AS number of the BGP-4 peer to which routes are advertised. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Export/&lt;ex_plcy&gt; peerAs &lt;asNo&gt;</b>
3	Specify the IP address of the peer AS to which routes are advertised. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Export/&lt;ex_plcy&gt; peerIpAddress &lt;addr&gt;</b>
4	Specify the protocol to which the export policy applies. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Export/&lt;ex_plcy&gt; protocol &lt;prtcl&gt;</b>
5	If you specified EGP in the <i>protocol</i> attribute, specify the number of the EGP AS to which the export policy applies. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Export/&lt;ex_plcy&gt; egpAs &lt;egp_id&gt;</b> If you set this attribute to a non-zero value, the <i>protocol</i> attribute must be set to all or EGP.
6	If you specified BGP in the <i>protocol</i> attribute, specify the number of the BGP-4 AS to which the export policy applies. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Export/&lt;ex_plcy&gt; bgpAs &lt;bgp_id&gt;</b> If you set this attribute to a non-zero value, the <i>protocol</i> attribute must be set to all, bgpInternal or bgpExternal.
7	If you specified OSPF in the <i>protocol</i> attribute, specify the OSPF tag for the OSPF routes to which the export policy applies. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Export/&lt;ex_plcy&gt; ospfTag &lt;ospf_tag&gt;</b> If you set this attribute to a non-zero value, the <i>protocol</i> attribute must be set to all or ospfExternal.



- 8 If you specified RIP in the *protocol* attribute, specify the local RIP interface from which RIP routes were learned. If you set this attribute to a non-zero value, the *protocol* attribute must be set to all or RIP.

```
set Vr/<vr_name> Ip Bgp Export/<ex_plcy> ripIf <rip_if>
```

The IP address of the RIP interface corresponds to the IP address of a *IpLogicalIf* component configured under the IP port. For more information, see [Enabling IpPort on a protocol port \(page 99\)](#).

- 9 If you specified RIP in the *protocol* attribute, specify the RIP neighbor from which RIP routes were learned.

```
set Vr/<vr_name> Ip Bgp Export/<ex_plcy> ripNbr  
<rip_nbr>
```

If you set this attribute to a non-zero value, the *protocol* attribute must be set to all or RIP.

- 10 Specify a preference for routes that match the export policy.

```
set Vr/<vr_name> Ip Bgp Export/<ex_plcy> locPref  
<loc_pref>
```

- 11 Specify whether BGP-4 advertises or blocks routes that meet the export policy's criteria.

```
set Vr/<vr_name> Ip Bgp Export/<ex_plcy> advertise  
<send_block>
```

- 12 Specify the address family of the export policy.

```
set Vr/<vr_name> Ip Bgp Export/<im_plcy> addressFamily  
<address_family> ipv4Unicast
```

MBGP uses the same export BGP policy at the VCG level as BGP. For information about MBGP, see the chapter "Configuring multi-protocol BGP," in NN10600-803 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP VPN Configuration Management*.

---

--End--

---



## Variable definitions

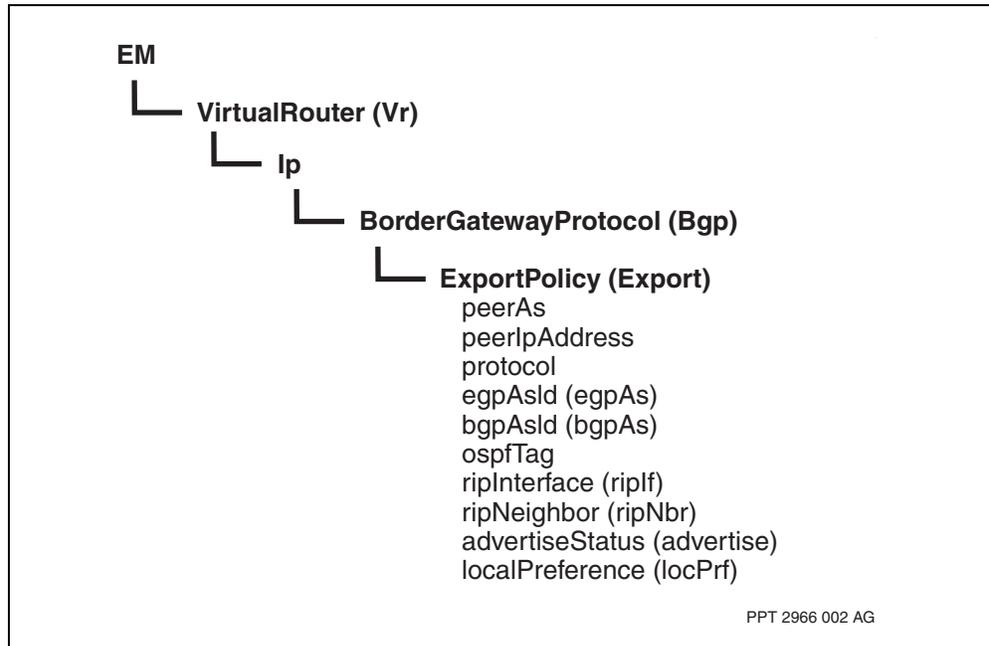
Variable	Value
<addr>	is the IP address of the BGP-4 peer. If you set this value to 0.0.0.0, the policy matches any IP address.
<address_family>	defines the multi-protocol extension address family of the routes to which the policy applies. The addressFamily attribute is used to distinguish the policy for MBGP applications compared to BGP applications. A policy may be selected to apply only to MBGP (mbgpVpn), only to BGP (ipv4Unicast), or both. The default is both.
<asNo>	identifies the AS to which the BGP-4 peer belongs. If you set this value to 0, BGP-4 advertises to all peer ASs.
<bgp_id>	is the number of the BGP AS.
<egp_id>	is the number of the EGP AS.
<ex_plcy>	is the instance number of the export policy.
<loc_pref>	is the preference for routes that match the criteria of the export policy.
<ospf_tag>	is the OSPF tag stored in OSPF external routes.
<prtcl>	identifies the protocol type for matching routes.
<rip_if>	is the IP address of the RIP interface from which RIP routes were learned.
<rip_nbr>	is the IP address of the RIP neighbor from which RIP routes were learned.
<send_block>	indicates BGP-4 behavior for routes that match the export policy.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.



---

## Procedure job aid

### BGP-4 export policy component hierarchy





## Configuring BGP-4 AS weight policy

Configure BGP-4 autonomous systems (AS) weight policy to set a preference for one autonomous system and discriminate against other autonomous systems.

### Procedure steps

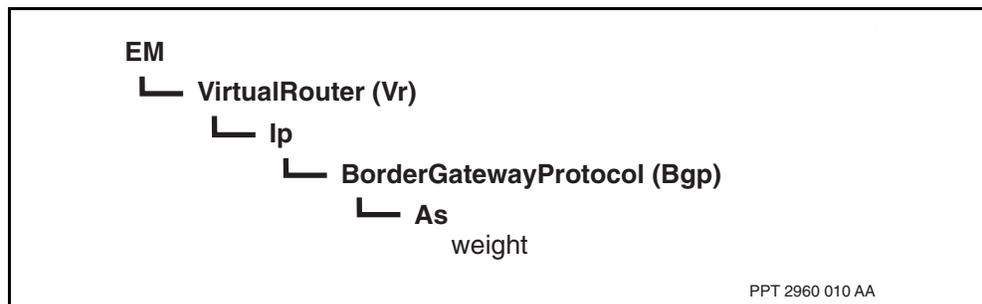
Step	Action
1	Create an instance of an AS weight policy. The instance number only identifies the policy and is not related to policy preference.  <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp As/&lt;as_no&gt;</code>
2	Specify the weight for the AS of the BGP-4 instance. The lowest weight is preferred in route selection.  <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp As/&lt;as_no&gt; weight &lt;as_wgt&gt;</code>
--End--	

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<as_no>	is the instance number of the AS.
<as_wgt>	is the weight assigned to the AS.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### BGP-4 AS weight policy component hierarchy





## Configuring BGP-4 aggregate policy

Configure BGP-4 aggregate policy to enable BGP-4 to combine the characteristics of different routes and advertise the combination as a single route. Aggregation reduces the data a BGP-4 speaker stores and exchanges with other BGP-4 speakers.

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Create an instance of an BGP-4 aggregate policy. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Aggregate/&lt;aggr&gt;</b>
2	Define a set of routes if you want to specify the routes that BGP-4 aggregates or advertises with the aggregated route policy. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Aggregate/&lt;aggr&gt; Net/&lt;net_no&gt;</b>
3	Specify the network prefix for the destination network associated with this BGP-4 aggregate policy. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Aggregate/&lt;aggr&gt; Net/&lt;net_no&gt; prefix &lt;prefix&gt;</b>
4	Specify the network prefix length for the destination network associated with this BGP-4 aggregate policy. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Aggregate/&lt;aggr&gt; Net/&lt;net_no&gt; length &lt;length&gt;</b>
5	Specify the protocol to which the aggregate policy applies: <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Aggregate/&lt;aggr&gt; protocol &lt;prtcl&gt;</b>
6	If you specified EGP in the <i>protocol</i> attribute (see <a href="#">step 5</a> ), specify the number of the EGP AS to which the aggregate policy applies. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Aggregate/&lt;aggr&gt; egpAs &lt;egp_id&gt;</b>
7	If you specified BGP in the <i>protocol</i> attribute, specify the number of the BGP AS to which the aggregate policy applies. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Aggregate/&lt;aggr&gt; bgpAs &lt;bgp_id&gt;</b>
8	If you specified OSPF in the <i>protocol</i> attribute, specify the OSPF tag for the OSPF routes to which the aggregate policy applies. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Aggregate/&lt;aggr&gt; ospfTag &lt;ospf_tag&gt;</b>
9	If you specified RIP in the <i>protocol</i> attribute, specify the local RIP interface from which RIP routes were learned. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Aggregate/&lt;aggr&gt; ripIf &lt;rip_if&gt;</b>



- 10 Specify whether BGP-4 aggregates or advertises routes that meet the aggregate policy's criteria.

```
set Vr/<vr_name> Ip Bgp Aggregate/<aggr> action  
<agg_adv>
```

--End--

### Variable definitions

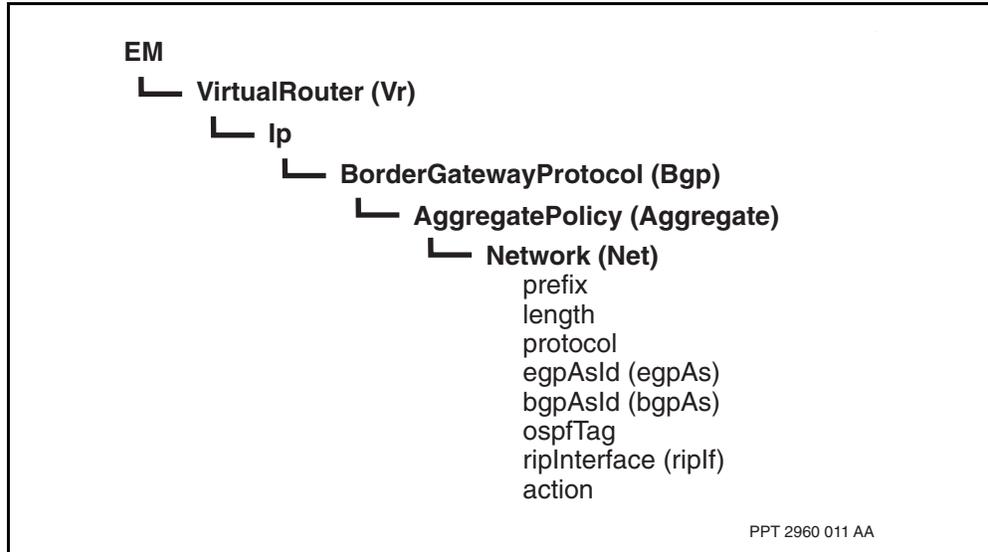
Variable	Value
<agg_adv>	indicates BGP-4 behavior, aggregate or advertise, for routes that match the aggregate policy.
<aggr>	is the aggregate policy, in the format <prefix, length>.
<bgp_id>	is the number of the BGP AS. If you set this attribute to a non-zero value, the <i>protocol</i> attribute must be set to all, bgpInternal or bgpExternal.
<egp_id>	is the number of the EGP AS. If you set this attribute to a non-zero value, the <i>protocol</i> attribute must be set to all or EGP.
<length>	is the length of the network prefix.
<net_no>	is the routes associated with the aggregate policy.
<ospf_tag>	is the OSPF tag stored in OSPF external routes. If you set this attribute to a non-zero value, the <i>protocol</i> attribute must be set to all or ospfExternal.
<prefix>	is the network prefix, in the form of an IP address.
<prtcl>	is the protocol type for matching routes.
<rip_if>	is the IP address of the RIP interface from which RIP routes were learned. If you set this attribute to a non-zero value, the <i>protocol</i> attribute must be set to all or RIP. The IP address of the RIP interface corresponds to the IP address of a <i>IpLogicalIf</i> component configured under the IP port. For more information, see <a href="#">Enabling IpPort on a protocol port (page 99)</a> .
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.



---

## Procedure job aid

### BGP-4 aggregate policy component hierarchy





---

## Configuring AS path attributes for export policy

Configure autonomous systems (AS) path attributes for export policy to provide detailed information about an advertised route. Routers can use path attribute information when making policy decisions.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Specify a regular expression that identifies AS paths to which BGP-4 advertises route updates if you do not want to use the default value.  <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Export/&lt;ex_plcy&gt; asExpr &lt;path_expr&gt;</b>
2	Specify a regular expression that identifies community paths to which BGP-4 advertises route updates if you do not want to use the default value.  <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Export/&lt;ex_plcy&gt; comExpr &lt;com_expr&gt;</b>
3	If you have configured an AS path and community path expression for the export policy, specify a preference for the policy.  <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Export/&lt;ex_plcy&gt; exprPref &lt;pref&gt;</b>  When the expression attributes of two export policies match the same AS or community, BGP-4 uses the preference metric to select a preferred policy. A higher value indicates a higher preference.
4	Specify the community number that BGP-4 inserts in the community path attribute before advertising routes identified by this policy.  <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Export/&lt;ex_plcy&gt; sendCom &lt;com_no&gt;</b>

---

--End--

---

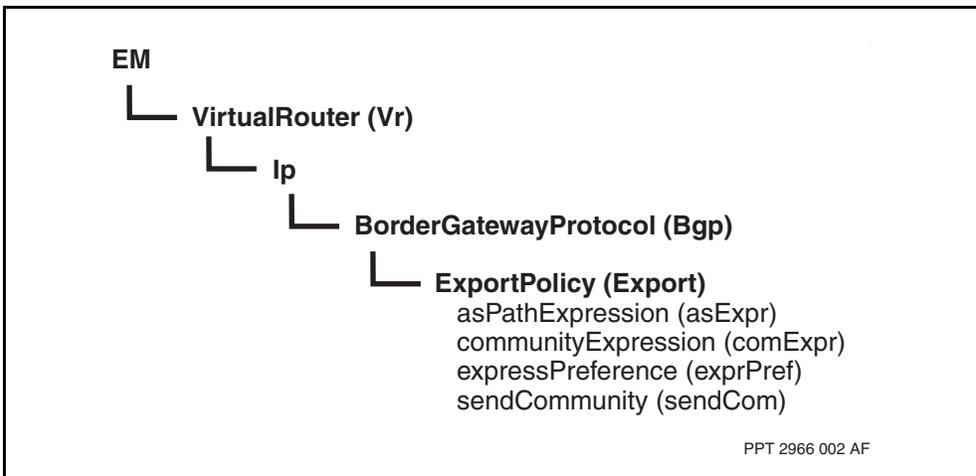


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<com_expr>	a regular expression identifying community paths to match.
<com_no>	is the community number added to the community path attribute.
<path_expr>	a regular expression identifying AS paths to match.
<pref>	is the relative preference of a path-based policy.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### AS path attributes for export policy component hierarchy





## Configuring multi-exit discrimination for export policy

Configure multi-exit discrimination for export policy to include the preferred entry point to the autonomous system in updates to external peers.

### Procedure steps

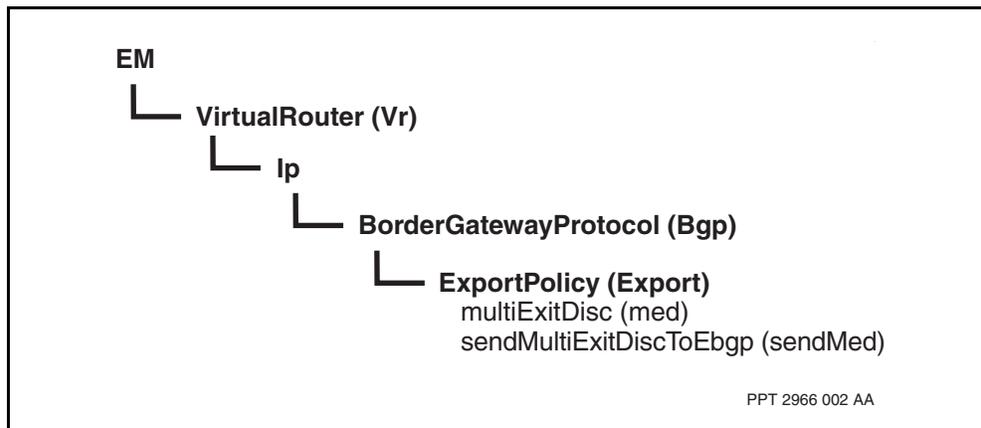
Step	Action
1	Specify the metric that BGP-4 uses for this export policy to discriminate between multiple exit points to an adjacent AS.  <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Export/&lt;ex_plcy&gt; med &lt;med_value&gt;</code>
2	Specify whether BGP-4 includes the MED value in updates to EBGp peers.  <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Export/&lt;ex_plcy&gt; sendMed &lt;true_false&gt;</code>
--End--	

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<med_value>	is the multi-exit discrimination (MED) metric.
<true_false>	indicates whether BGP-4 includes the MED metric in updates.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### Multi-exit discrimination for export policy component hierarchy





## Inserting a dummy AS in update messages

Insert a dummy autonomous systems (AS) in update messages to alter the AS path of the outgoing route.

### Procedure steps

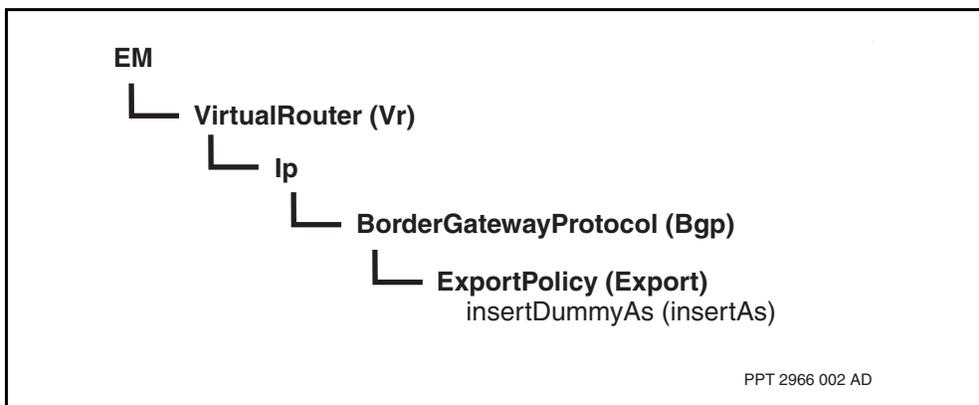
Step	Action
1	Specify a sequence of AS numbers to be inserted before the local AS number in the AS path attribute if you do not want to use the default value.  <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Export/&lt;ex_plcy&gt; insertAs &lt;AS_seq&gt;</code>
--End--	

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<AS_seq>	a sequence of AS numbers, separated by a period.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### Inserting a dummy AS in update messages component hierarchy





---

## Specifying destination networks for export policy

Specify destination networks for export policy to define which networks to export BGP-4 routing information to.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	<p>Specify a destination network for this BGP-4 export policy if you want to restrict the destination networks.</p> <pre>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Export/&lt;ex_plcy&gt; Net/&lt;net_no&gt;</pre> <p>You must create an instance of the <i>Network (Net)</i> subcomponent for each destination network associated with the export policy. If you do not specify any destination networks, BGP-4 applies the export policy to all networks.</p>
2	<p>Specify the network prefix for the destination network associated with this BGP-4 export policy.</p> <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Export/&lt;ex_plcy&gt; Net/&lt;net_no&gt; prefix &lt;prefix&gt;</pre>
3	<p>Specify the network prefix length for the destination network associated with this BGP-4 export policy.</p> <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Bgp Export/&lt;ex_plcy&gt; Net/&lt;net_no&gt; length &lt;length&gt;</pre>

---

--End--

---

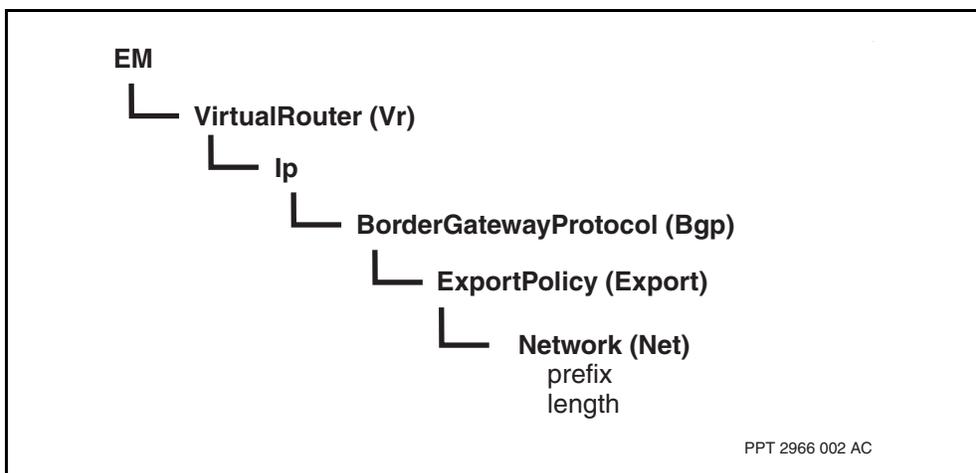


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<length>	is the length of the network prefix.
<net_no>	is the destination network associated with the export policy.
<prefix>	is the network prefix, in the form of an IP address.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### Specifying destination networks for export policy component hierarchy





---

## Configuring VR static ARP

---

Configure VR static address resolution protocol (ARP) for IP traffic to control ARP-related attributes. ARP maps 32-bit IP addresses to physical hardware addresses.

To eliminate the need to ARP a particular host, configure the *HostEntry* subcomponent of the *Ip* component to define static ARP entries. Static host entries take precedence over dynamic entries learned through the ARP process.

You also configure static ARP host entries to ensure IP connectivity across the ATM network when you are using VC-based multiplexing for IP traffic.

### Prerequisites

- Configure a media interface for IP traffic. See:
  - [Configuring an ATM MPE interface for IP traffic \(page 17\)](#). Specify the VC-based multiplexing as the encapsulation type to be used on the ATM MPE interface.
  - [Adding a frame relay DTE interface \(page 37\)](#)
- Associate the media interface with a connection. See
  - [Configuring an ATM PVC for an ATM MPE interface \(page 19\)](#). Associate the ATM MPE interface with an ATM VCC.
  - [Configuring frame relay DTE with Framers \(page 38\)](#)
  - [Configuring frame relay DTE with vFramer \(page 40\)](#)
  - [Configuring a direct connection for a frame relay DTE interface \(page 43\)](#)
- Create an IP port under the protocol port associated with the media interface. See [Enabling IpPort on a protocol port \(page 99\)](#).
- Do not configure static and dynamic ARP entries for the same IP address on the same VCC. You must configure both ends of the connection to be static. An ATM interface configured with a static ARP entry for an IP address will not respond to an inverse ARP request from a dynamic ARP.



for more ARP information, see NN10600-800 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP Technology Fundamentals*.

## Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	<p>Create a static ARP entry for IP routing to ensure IP connectivity across the network.</p> <pre>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Arp HostEntry/&lt;hostAddress&gt;, &lt;cos&gt;</pre>
2	<p>Configure the physical address of the host entry.</p> <p>If the media type is IP, use the command:</p> <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Arp HostEntry/&lt;hostAddress&gt;, &lt;cos&gt; physAddress &lt;MAC_address&gt;</pre> <p>If the media type is ATM or frame relay, use the command</p> <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Arp HostEntry/&lt;hostAddress&gt;, &lt;cos&gt; permanentVirtualCircuitNumber &lt;pvc_number&gt;</pre>
3	<p>If required, set the <i>maximumTransmissionUnit</i> (MTU) attribute.</p> <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Arp HostEntry/&lt;hostAddress&gt;, &lt;cos&gt; maxTxUnit &lt;mtu_size&gt;</pre>
4	<p>If required, set the <i>encapsulationType</i> attribute to a non-default value. The encapsulation default auto causes the correct encapsulation type to be chosen based on the media application (for example, Ethernet or IEEE802.3).</p> <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Arp HostEntry/&lt;hostAddress&gt;, &lt;cos&gt; encap &lt;encapsulation_type&gt;</pre> <p>This attribute can only be set for Ethernet media. All other media must use auto.</p>
--End--	

## Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<cos>	is the CoS index assigned to the packet. If you are using a VC-based media (FrDte, AtmMpe), the CoS index must be 0, 1, 2, or 3. For all other media types, use na.
<encapsulation_type>	one of auto, ieee8023, or Ethernet
<hostAddress>	is the IP address of the static host being defined
(1 of 2)	



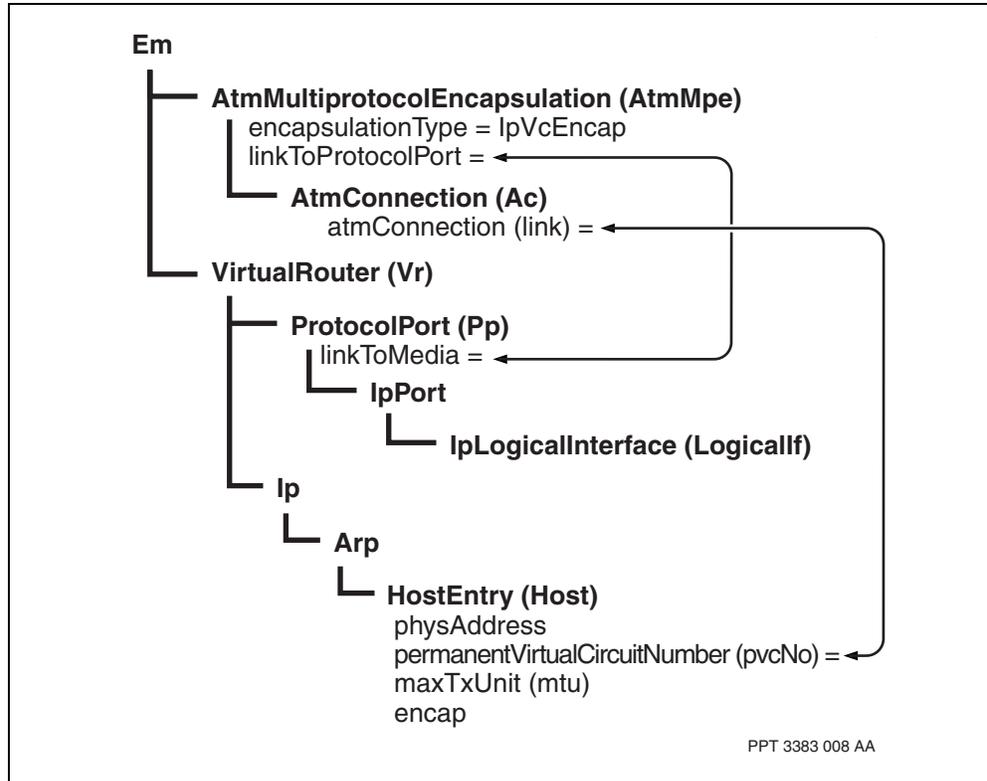
Variable	Value
<MAC_address>	is the 48-bit MAC address of the host being defined. It is formatted as zero to eight pairs of hex digits separated by dashes. The default address is 00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00.
<mtu_size>	is the size in bytes of the maximum transmission unit, or largest datagram, that the host can accept. The MTU must fall within the valid range for the media on which the host is located.
<pvc_number>	is the PVC for the static host entry.  If the media type is frame relay, then this value is the frame relay data link connection identifier.  If the media type is ATM, then this value is the instance number of the <i>AtmConnection</i> component on the ATM MPE interface.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

(2 of 2)



## Procedure job aid

### VR static ARP component hierarchy





---

## VR static route configuration

---

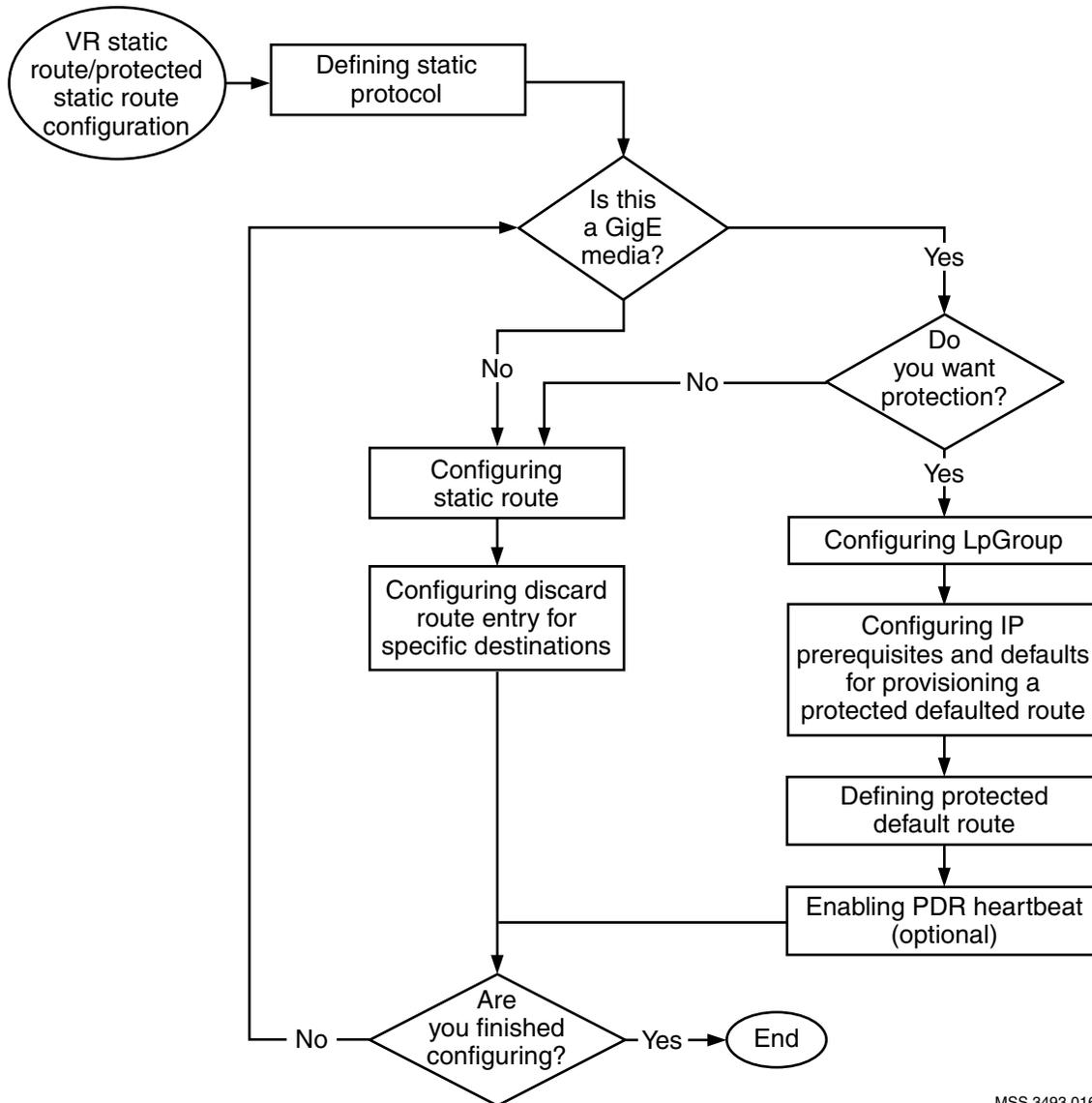
Configure VR static routes and a protected default route to allow Nortel Multiservice Switch nodes to specifically identify routes to remote IP networks or hosts.

### VR static route configuration

This task flow shows you the sequence of procedures to perform in order to configure static routes and a protected default route. To link to any procedure, go to [VR static route configuration procedures \(page 186\)](#).



**VR static route configuration procedures**



MSS 3493 016 AA

**VR static route configuration procedure navigation**

- [Defining static protocol \(page 188\)](#)
- [Configuring static route \(page 189\)](#)
- [Configuring discard route entry for specific destinations \(page 191\)](#)
- [Configuring LpGroup \(page 192\)](#)
- [Configuring IP prerequisites and defaults for provisioning a protected default route \(page 193\)](#)
- [Defining protected default route \(page 195\)](#)



- [Enabling PDR heartbeat \(page 197\)](#)



## Defining static protocol

Define static protocol to add the *Static* component.

### Procedure steps

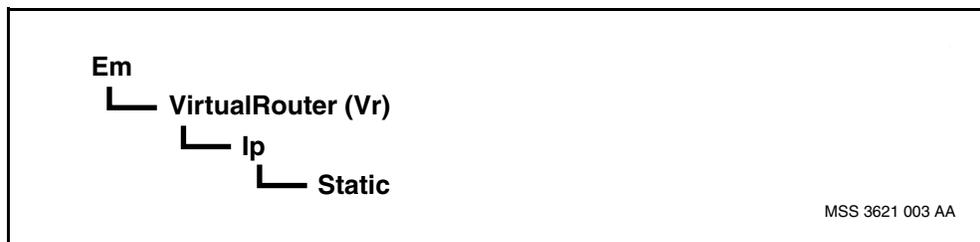
Step	Action
1	Add a <i>Static</i> component as a subcomponent of the <i>Ip</i> component. <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Static</code>
--End--	

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### Static protocol component hierarchy





## Configuring static route

Configure static routes to allow Nortel Multiservice Switch system to identify specific routes to remote IP networks or hosts. The definition includes a destination address, address mask, and one or more next hop addresses (gateways).

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	<p>Add static routes to the route table.</p> <pre>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Static RouteEntry/ &lt;ipAddress&gt;, &lt;destMask&gt;, &lt;tos&gt;</pre> <p>If ipAddress specifies a host, then provision destMask as 255.255.255.255.</p> <p>Provision locally attached hosts as <i>Arp HostEntry</i> components instead of a <i>Static</i> component entry.</p>
2	<p>Provision at least one <i>NextHop</i> component for each defined static route. The <i>NextHop_ipAddress</i> parameter must denote a locally provisioned logical interface, for example, the <i>NextHop_ipAddress</i> must belong to one of the subnets provisioned under an <i>IpPort</i>.</p> <pre>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Static RouteEntry/ &lt;ipAddress&gt;, &lt;destMask&gt;, &lt;tos&gt; NextHop/ &lt;nextHop_ipAddress&gt;</pre>

**Attention:** If the static route is going to be exported into an OSPF domain as an OSPF external route, the *NextHop\_ipAddress* cannot be set to the remote router's OSPF interface address. In this case, the *NextHop\_ipAddress* must be set to an address that points outside of the OSPF domain.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 3 | <p>If required, set the metric for the route.</p> <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Static RouteEntry/<br/>&lt;ipAddress&gt;, &lt;destMask&gt;, &lt;tos&gt;<br/>NextHop/&lt;nextHop_ipAddress&gt; metric &lt;cost&gt;</pre>  |
| 4 | <p>If required, change the route preference attribute <i>defaultStaticRemoteRtePref</i> for static remote routes.</p> <pre>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Static defaultStaticRemoteRtePref<br/>&lt;route_pref&gt;</pre> <p>When you change the attribute <i>defaultStaticRemoteRtePref</i>, services related to that route are disrupted during activation.</p> |
| 5 | <p>If required, override the route preference attribute <i>staticRemoteRtePreference</i>.</p>   |



```

set Vr/<vr_name> Ip Static RouteEntry/
<ip_address>, <destMask>, <tos>
staticRemoteRtePreference <override>

```

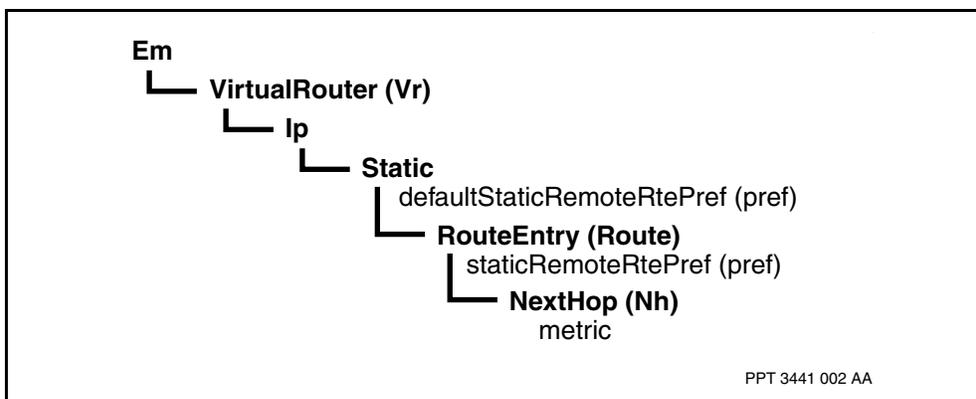
--End--

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<cost>	is a relative metric value assigned to the static route.
<destMask>	is the subnetwork mask of the remote node used with the IP address.
<ipAddress>	is the IP address of the remote node. It can refer either to a specific node or to a network.
<nextHop_ipAddress>	is the IP address to use to reach the next router in the path to the destination.
<override>	is the override route preference.  Attribute default is sameAsStatic, which means use the value of attribute <i>defaultStaticRemoteRtePref</i> for the route preference.  To prefer static remote routes over OSPF internal routes, the recommended setting for <i>staticRemoteRtePreference</i> is 5.
<route_pref>	is the route preference.
<tos>	is the type of service. Currently, only the default value of 0 is supported.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### Static route component hierarchy





## Configuring discard route entry for specific destinations

Configure discard route entry for specific destinations to identify destination networks and nodes that do not receive packets through IP, and to discard packets addressed to these destinations.

### Procedure steps

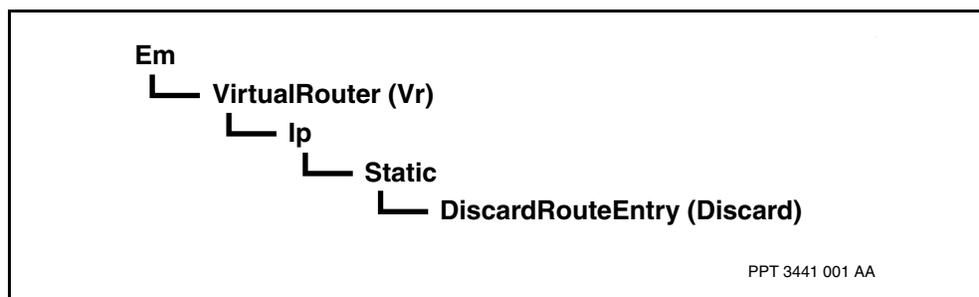
Step	Action
1	<p>Add a <i>DiscardRoute</i> component for each route that is not to receive packets through this router.</p> <pre>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Static DiscardRouteEntry/ &lt;destAddress&gt;, &lt;destMask&gt;</pre>
--End--	

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<destAddress>	is the IP address of the host or route whose packets are discarded.
<destMask>	is the subnetwork mask associated with the destination address.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### Discard route entry for specific destinations component hierarchy





## Configuring LpGroup

Configure the LpGroup to group 4pGe FPs together, and to specify the software migration behavior for each FP.

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Add the <i>LpGroup</i> component. <code>add LpGroup/&lt;lp_group&gt;</code>
2	Add the 4pGe LPs to the <i>LpGroup</i> . <code>add LpGroup/&lt;lp_group&gt; Lp/&lt;lp_number&gt;</code>
3	Set the software migration behavior for each 4pGe LP in the <i>LpGroup</i> . <code>set LpGroup/&lt;lp_group&gt; Lp/&lt;lp_number&gt; migrationBehaviour &lt;mig_behaviour_value&gt;</code>
4	Optionally, repeat <a href="#">step 2</a> and <a href="#">step 3</a> to add one or two more LPs.

--End--

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<lp_group>	is the LpGroup for the 4pGe LPs.
<lp_number>	is the number of the Lp.
<mig_behaviour_value>	is the migration behaviour value: stayInServiceShelf or moveToMigrationShelf.

### Procedure job aid

#### LpGroup component hierarchy





---

## Configuring IP prerequisites and defaults for provisioning a protected default route

Configure equal cost multi path (ECMP) as disabled for both Static and OSPF protocols to allow a protected default route (PDR) to be provisioned. PDR is not supported with ECMP enabled.

---

**Attention:** If an OSPF default route (DR) is introduced into the PDR VR space then an outage of more than one second is expected. In order to maintain outages of less than one second with PDR present, this configuration is not recommended.

---

### Prerequisites

- Ensure that attribute *autoNegotiation* of the *Ethernet* component is turned on. For information, see NN10600-551 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 FP Configuration Reference*.
- Ensure that attribute *cpEquipmentProtection* of the *Shelf* component is set to hot. See procedure Changing the CP equipment protection mode in NN10600-550 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Common Configuration Procedures*.
- In order to support the outage requirement of less than one second during a HSM event, the Multiservice Switch 15000 node that has a VR with the PDR present must also have static address resolution protocol (ARP) entries provisioned against the PDR nextHops that are reachable over the migration active (MA) Ge FP links. Dynamic ARP entries must be used against the PDR nextHops that are reachable over the service active (SA) Ge FP links for this PDR VR.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Optionally, set the <i>preConfigFwdPath</i> attribute to avoid 'first packet exceptions' when installing more specific static or OSPF routes.  <b>set Vr/1 Ip preConfigFwdPath enabled</b>

---

**Attention:** Turning on this attribute should only be done if the number of nextHop routers, across all VRs of this switch, is less than 1000; otherwise resource exhaustion of IP forwarding records on the FP may occur.

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 2 | Disable ECMP support in the static protocol.<br><br><b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Static maxEcmpNextHops 1</b> |
|---|---|



- 
- 3      Disable ECMP support in the OSPF protocol.  
         **set Vr/<vr\_name> Ip Ospf emcpStatus disable**

---

**--End--**

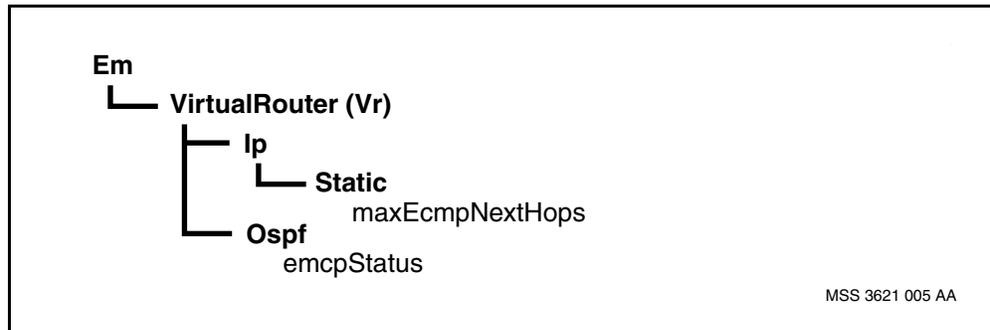
---

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### IP prerequisites and defaults component hierarchy





---

## Defining protected default route

Define protected default route to enable hitless (less than one second) IP forwarding support on the IP default route, for 4pGe line failures, card failures, and software migrations.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add an IP default route. <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Static Route/0.0.0.0,0.0.0.0,0</code>
2	Set IP default route as protected. <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Static Route/0.0.0.0,0.0.0.0,0 protected yes</code>
3	Set the route preference to most preferred for the protected default route. <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Static Route/0.0.0.0,0.0.0.0,0 staticRemoteRtePreference 1</code>
4	Add a nextHop for the protected default route. The nextHop must be attached to a 4pGe protocol port. <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Static Route/0.0.0.0,0.0.0.0,0 nextHop/&lt;nextHop_address&gt;</code>
5	Repeat <a href="#">step 4</a> to add one or more nextHops.

---

**Attention:** A protected default route must have at least 2 4pGe nextHops over unique 4pGe protocol ports.

---

--End--

---

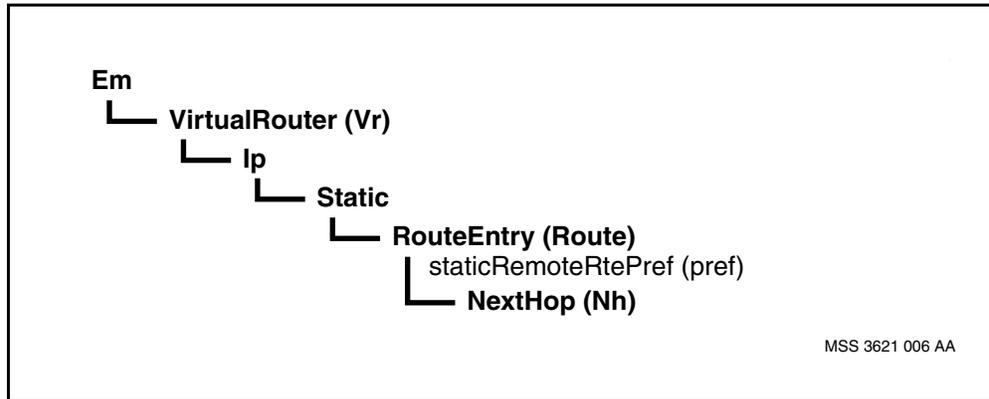


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<nextHop_address>	is the IP address of the nextHop router.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### Protected default route component hierarchy





## Enabling PDR heartbeat

Optionally, enable heartbeat to verify layer 3 connectivity of protected default route (PDR) next hop.

### Procedure steps

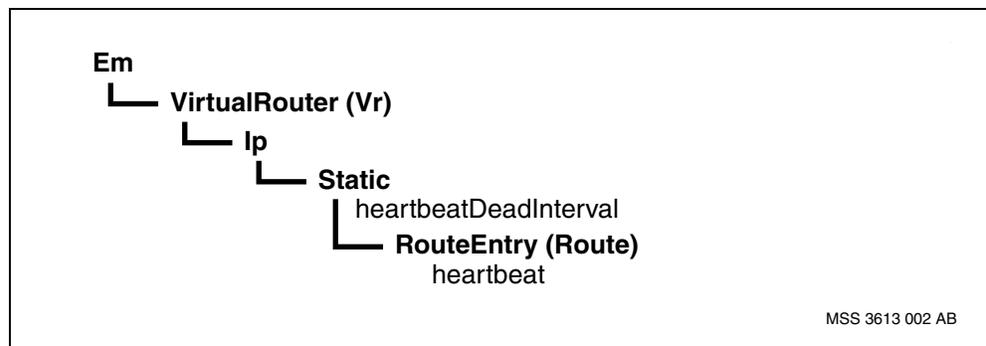
Step	Action
1	Set the layer 3 heartbeat dead interval for PDRs.  <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Static heartbeatDeadInterval &lt;heartbeatDeadInterval&gt;</code>
2	Enable the heartbeat for the PDR.  <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Static Route/0.0.0.0,0.0.0.0,0 heartbeat enabled</code>
--End--	

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<heartbeatDeadInterval>	specifies the default behavior with respect to the layer 3 static heartbeat dead router interval for the next hop routers of protected static routes. If no heartbeat polling responses have been received in the specified interval, then the heartbeat status of this nextHop router is down.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### PDR heartbeat component hierarchy





---

# Configuring VR BOOTP routing protocol

---

Configure bootstrap protocol (BOOTP) to allow dynamic configuration of a booting host. Nortel Multiservice Switch systems support the BOOTP relay agent functionality described in RFC951 and RFC1542

## Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Create the BOOTP component, as a subcomponent of IP, so that the IP/UDP accepts packets destined for the BOOTP server port. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip BootpRelayAgent</b>
2	Add a <i>BootpPort</i> subcomponent to all IP interfaces on the <i>Vr</i> component. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort BootpPort</b>
3	Set the <i>relayForwardStatus</i> attribute to control how BOOTP request packets, received on another port, will be flooded out this port. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort BootpPort relayForwardStatus &lt;status_value&gt;</b>
4	Identify the logical interface whose address is to be the GIADDR of this BOOTP port. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort BootpPort bootpLogicalInterface &lt;portIf__value&gt;</b>
5	Identify a list of relay addresses to receive BOOTP request messages when they are received on this port. BOOTP requests are also broadcast out all other BOOTP configured ports according to the <i>relayForwardStatus</i> attribute of the outgoing port. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort BootpPort relayAddress &lt;addr__value&gt;</b>

---

--End--

---

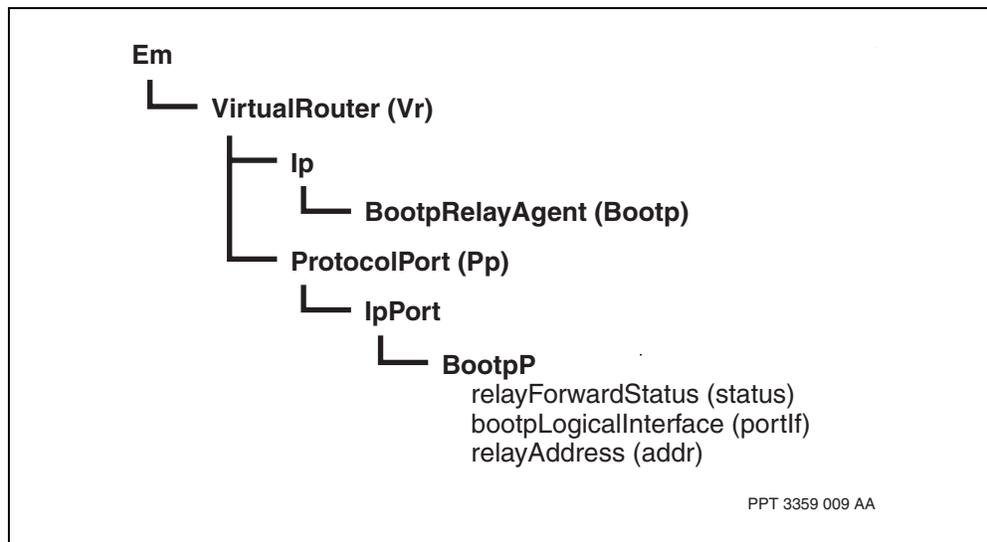


## Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<addr_value>	is the value for the <i>relayAddress</i> attribute. There is no default value.
<portIf_value>	is the value for the <i>bootpLogicalInterface</i> attribute. The default IP address is 0.0.0.0.
<pp_name>	is the name of the protocol port.
<status_value>	is the value for the <i>relayForwardStatus</i> attribute. The default value is disabled.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

## Procedure job aid

### Bootstrap protocol component hierarchy





---

# VR IP features configuration

---

Configure VR IP features to provide additional IP capabilities that enhance Nortel Multiservice Switch networks.

## Prerequisites to VR IP features configuration

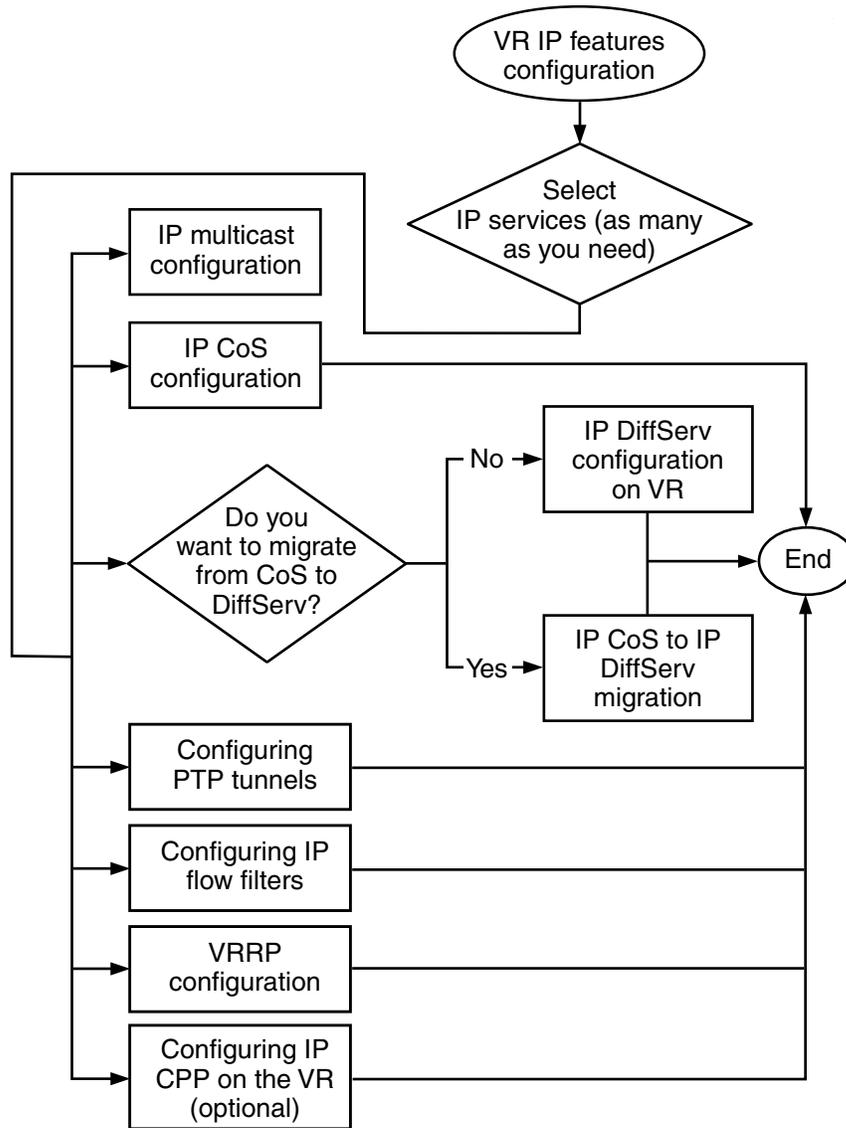
- For a list of services supported on specific cards, see section “Applications and services supported by function processor” in NN10600-551 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 FP Configuration Reference*.

## VR IP features configuration tasks

This work flow shows you the sequence of tasks you perform to configure VR IP services. To link to any task, go to [VR IP features configuration task navigation \(page 201\)](#) following the task flow.



**VR IP features configuration task**



MSS 3493 022 AA

**VR IP features configuration task navigation**

- [IP multicast configuration \(page 203\)](#)
- IP CoS configuration. See NN10600-809 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Layer 3 Traffic Management Configuration*
- IP DiffServ configuration on VR. See NN10600-809 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Layer 3 Traffic Management Configuration*
- IP CoS to DiffServ migration. See NN10600-809 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Layer 3 Traffic Management Configuration*



- [Configuring PTP tunnels \(page 213\)](#)
- Configuring VR IP flow filters. See NN10600-809 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Layer 3 Traffic Management Configuration*
- [VRRP configuration \(page 215\)](#)
- [Configuring IP CPP on the VR \(page 231\)](#)



---

# IP multicast configuration

---

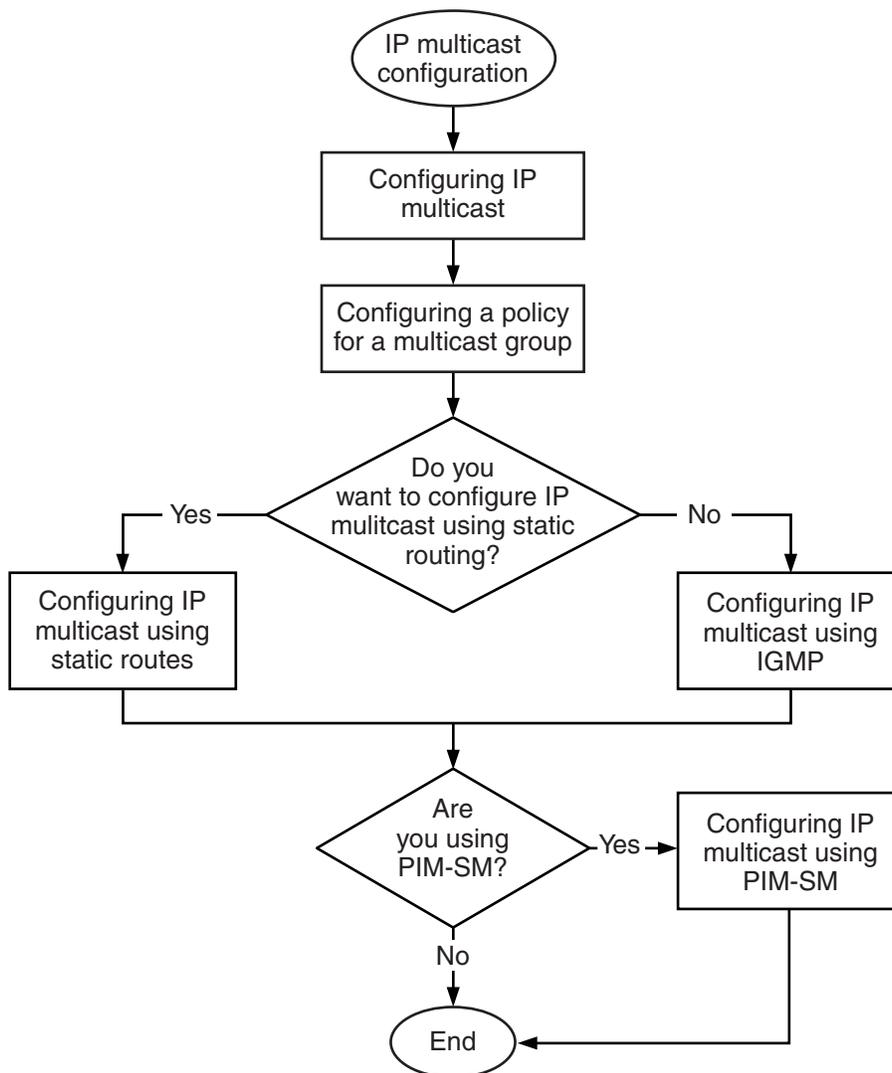
Configure IP multicast to transmit multicast data packets to multiple receivers.

## IP multicast configuration procedures

This task flow shows you the sequence of procedures you perform to configure IP multicast. To link to any procedure, go to [IP multicast configuration procedure navigation \(page 204\)](#).



**IP multicast configuration procedures**



MSS 3493 005 AA

**IP multicast configuration procedure navigation**

- [Configuring IP multicast \(page 205\)](#)
- [Configuring a policy for a multicast group \(page 206\)](#)
- [Configuring IP multicast using static routes \(page 208\)](#)
- [Configuring IP multicast using IGMP \(page 210\)](#)
- [Configuring IP multicast using PIM-SM \(page 211\)](#)



## Configuring IP multicast

Configure IP multicast on a VR to add the *Mcast* component and provide support for IP multicast.

### Prerequisites

- Configure IP.

### Procedure steps

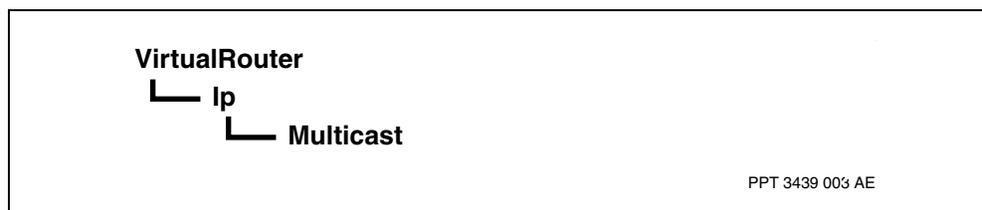
Step	Action
1	Add the <i>multicast</i> component to the VR. <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Mcast</code>
--End--	

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### IP multicast component hierarchy





## Configuring a policy for a multicast group

Configure a policy for a multicast group to control multicast forwarding on specified interfaces. Policy groups can be configured to include a range of multicast group addresses and an action attribute which is set to allow or deny the forwarding of the specified groups. Policy groups may be linked to one or more interfaces.

---

**Attention:** A new policy will not take effect if the multicast group addressed by the policy is already in the multicast forwarding table and if one of the OIFs for the group in the multicast forwarding table is one of the *linkToPolicyUser* ports.

---

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add a <i>PolicyGroup</i> component.  <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Mcast PolicyGroup/ &lt;policy_group_name&gt;</code>
2	Add a <i>Group</i> component.  <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Mcast PolicyGroup/ &lt;policy_group_name&gt; group/&lt;ipAddress&gt;, &lt;netmask&gt;</code>
3	Set the action performed by the policy.  <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Mcast PolicyGroup/ &lt;policy_group_name&gt; action &lt;action&gt;</code>

---

--End--

---

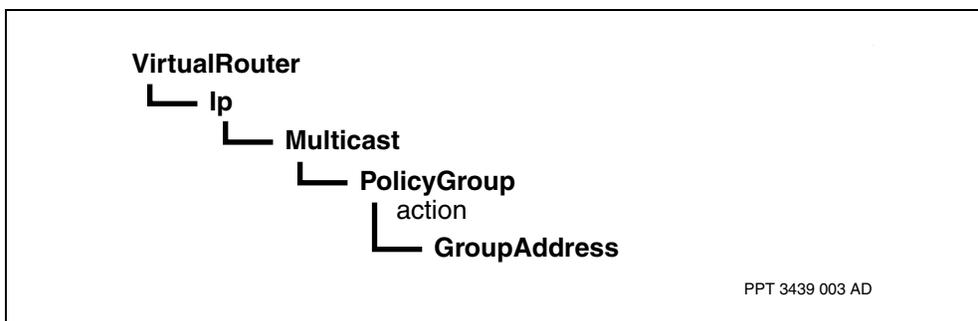


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<action>	specifies the action to be taken if a join request is received for any of the multicast group addresses configured as part of this policy.
<ip_address>	is the 32-bit class D multicast group IP address for a local subnet.
<netmask>	is the 32-bit network mask you assign to this IP address.
<policy_group_name>	is the descriptive name you assign to identify a particular policy group.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### Policy for a multicast group component hierarchy





---

## Configuring IP multicast using static routes

Configure IP multicast using static routes to enable the forwarding of multicast traffic without the use of multicast routing protocols. Static routes may be used alone or in combination with routing protocols. For example, PIM-SM will initiate joins for multicast groups specified by static entries as well as those learned through the use of IGMP.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add a <i>Static Route</i> component. <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Mcast Static</code>
2	Configure a static route for a multicast group. <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Mcast Static Route/ &lt;ipAddress&gt;, &lt;domain&gt;</code>
3	Configure an out interface to a neighboring multicast router for a static route. <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Mcast Static Route/ &lt;ipaddress&gt;, &lt;domain&gt; outInterfaces Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Pp/ &lt;pp_id&gt; Ipp logicalIf/&lt;ipAddress&gt;</code>

---

--End--

---

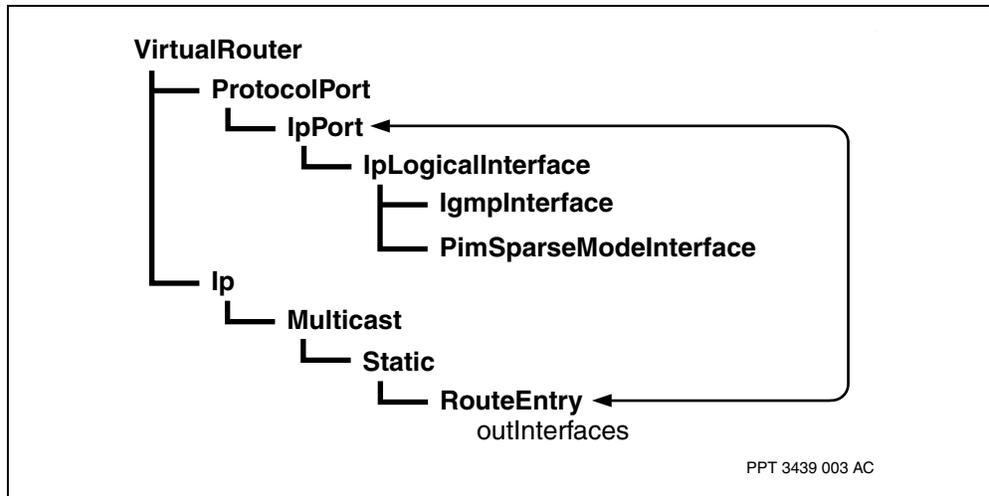


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<domain>	is the 32-bit network mask you assign to this IP address.
<ip_address>	is the -32 bit class D multicast group IP address for a local subnet.
<pp_id>	is the instance name you assign to this protocol port.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### IP multicast using static routes component hierarchy





## Configuring IP multicast using IGMP

Configure IP multicast to run the internet group management protocol (IGMP) protocol on a virtual router.

### Procedure steps

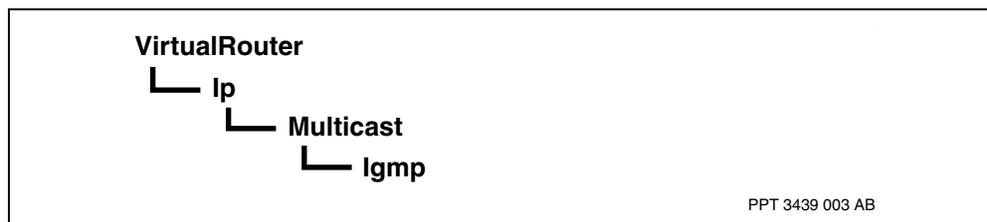
Step	Action
1	Enable the IGMP protocol on the VR by adding the <i>Igmp</i> component. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Mcast Igmp</b>
2	Enable IGMP on an interface that will communicate with IGMP hosts by adding an <i>Igmplf</i> component. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Pp/&lt;pp_id&gt; IpPort LogicalIf/&lt;ipAddress&gt; IgmpIf</b>
--End--	

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<ip_address>	is the 32-bit address you assign to this logical interface.
<pp_id>	is the instance name you assign to this protocol port.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### IP multicast using IGMP component hierarchy





## Configuring IP multicast using PIM-SM

Configure IP multicast with PIM-SM to route multicast traffic to sparsely populated receivers.

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Enable PIM-SM by adding the <i>PimSm</i> component. <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Mcast PimSm</code>
2	Configure a multicast domain on the VR by adding a domain identifier. <code>add vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Mcast Domain/&lt;n&gt;</code>
3	Configure a PIM-SM multicast domain on the VR by adding a <i>Domain</i> component. <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Mcast PimSm Domain/&lt;n&gt;</code>
4	Configure a VR as a candidate RP router in a domain by adding the <i>CandidateRp (CRp)</i> component. <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Mcast PimSm Domain/&lt;n&gt; CandidateRp</code>
5	Set the range of class D multicast addresses for the candidate RP router using the <i>CRp</i> component. <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Mcast PimSm Domain/&lt;n&gt; CRp Group/&lt;group_address&gt;, &lt;mask&gt;</code>
6	Configure a VR as a candidate BSR router in a domain by adding the <i>CandidateBsr (CBsr)</i> component. <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Mcast PimSm Domain/&lt;n&gt; CandidateBsr</code>
7	Enable the PIM-SM protocol on the IP interface of the applicable protocol port by adding the <i>PimSmIf</i> component. <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Pp/&lt;pp_id&gt; IpPort LogicalIf/&lt;ipAddress&gt; PimSmIf</code>

**Attention:** It is strongly recommended to enable PIM-SM on each IP interface of all protocol ports. This is the key step to make sure that IP Multicast has the same understanding of topology as IP. As there is no independent routing information base serving exclusively for IP Multicast, PIM-SM has to seek help from unicast routing table to determine the nextHop to the sender/RP. This is why we have to keep multicast understanding the topology consistently with unicast. Failure to do so would result in PIM Join/Prune messages sent to non-PIM capable interfaces and thus discarded consequently.



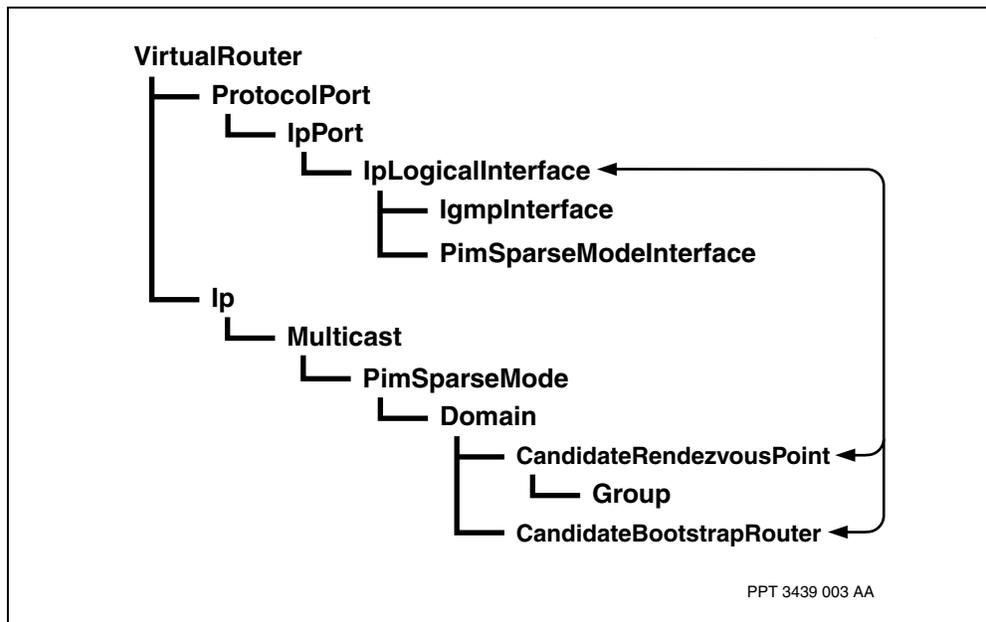
--End--

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<group_address>	is the instance value of the group address.
<ip_address>	is the 32-bit address you assign to this logical interface.
<mask>	is the instance value of the mask.
<n>	is the number assigned to this instance of the Domain component.
<pp_id>	is the instance name you assign to this protocol port.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

### Procedure job aid

#### IP multicast using PIM-SM component hierarchy





---

# Configuring PTP tunnels

---

Configure a point-to-point (PTP) IP tunnel instance to connect two physically separate networks, which share the same address space through an IP network of a different address space.

## Prerequisites

- [Configuring and linking a protocol port to a media interface \(page 97\)](#)
- [Enabling IpPort on a protocol port \(page 99\)](#)
- Configure a RIP or OSPF interface so that the tunnel endpoints can receive information about remote subnetworks. See
  - [Configuring a RIP interface \(page 108\)](#)
  - [Configuring an OSPF interface \(page 132\)](#)

## Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Create an IP tunnel instance on the virtual router. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Tunnel</b>
2	Configure the end point for a point-to-point IP tunnel. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Tunnel Sep/&lt;sep_id&gt;</b>
3	Specify the source address of the IP tunnel. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Tunnel Sep/&lt;sep_id&gt; src &lt;src_addr&gt;</b>
4	Specify the tunnel destination address. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Tunnel Sep/&lt;sep_id&gt; dst &lt;dst_addr&gt;</b>
5	Specify the tunnel encapsulation type. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Tunnel Sep/&lt;sep_id&gt; encapType &lt;type&gt;</b>

---

--End--

---

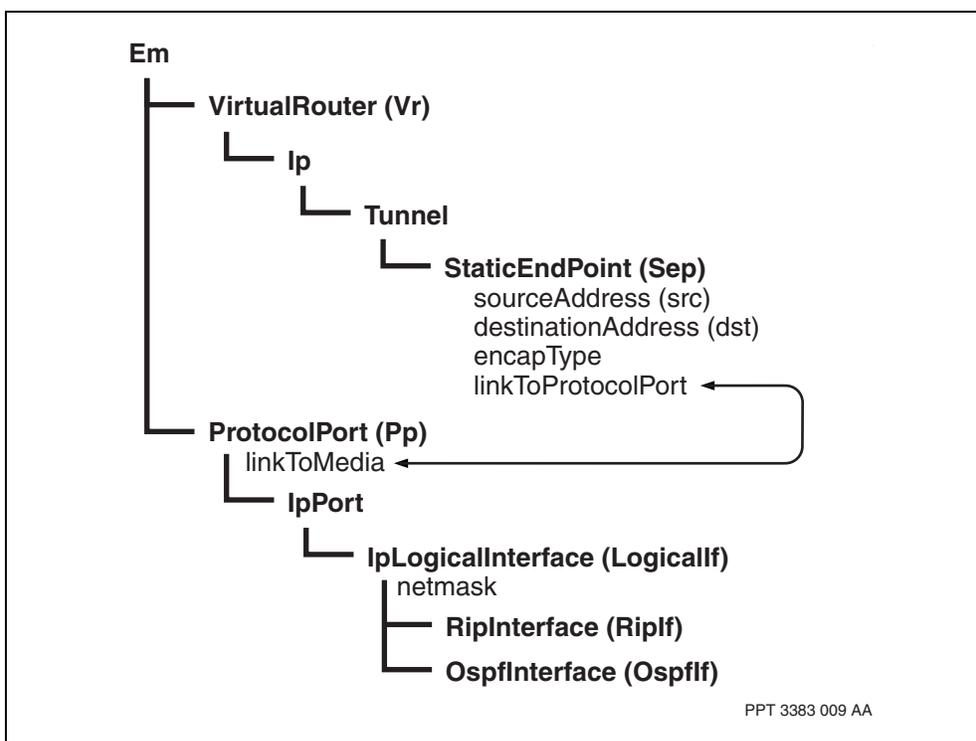


## Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<dst_addr>	is the IP address at the destination end of the tunnel.
<sep_id>	is the instance number of the tunnel end point.
<src_addr>	is the IP address at the source end of the tunnel.
<type>	is the encapsulation type: IP in IP.
<vr_name>	is the name of the virtual router.

## Procedure job aid

### PTP tunnels component hierarchy





---

## VRRP configuration

---

Configure the virtual router redundancy protocol (VRRP) to enable router redundancy and availability to IP routing.

The Nortel Multiservice Switch system supports the VRRP functionality described in RFC 3768.

### Prerequisites to VRRP configuration

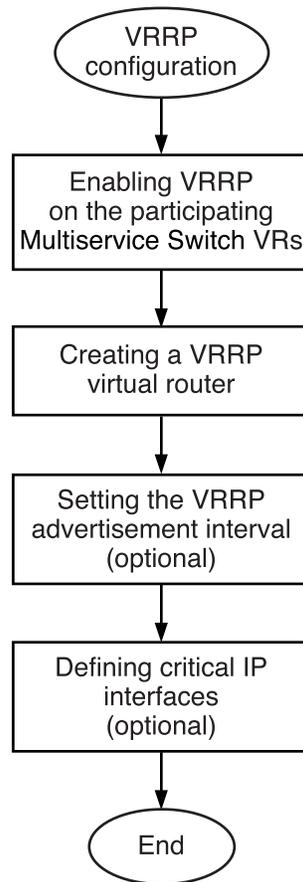
- See the section on VRRP in the NN10600-800 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP Technology Fundamentals*.
- The task flow and procedures in this section describe configuring and monitoring VRRP software and services only. Basic configuration at the node level (in this case, creating an instance of a logical processor type (LPT), and adding the *ip* and *ipVrrp* services to the *featureList* attribute) must be performed first. Use the tasks and procedures in NN10600-550 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Common Configuration Procedures* if you require supporting information or need to provision or reconfigure any node or nodal elements to support VRRP features.

### VRRP configuration procedures

This task flow displays the sequence of procedures you must perform to configure VRRP. To link to any procedure, go to [VRRP configuration procedure navigation \(page 216\)](#).



## VRRP configuration procedures



MSS 3490 001 AA

### VRRP configuration procedure navigation

- [Enabling VRRP on participating Multiservice Switch VRs \(page 217\)](#)
- [Creating a VRRP virtual router \(page 218\)](#)
- [Setting the VRRP advertisement interval \(page 227\)](#)
- [Defining critical IP interfaces \(page 229\)](#)



## Enabling VRRP on participating Multiservice Switch VRs

Enable VRRP on Nortel Multiservice Switch node VRs to enable the VRRP process on participating VRs. Typically, VRs are on different Multiservice Switch nodes and are connected over an Ethernet LAN segment.

Alternatively, any of the following configurations can be used:

- A single Multiservice Switch that has two VRs with the same IP address reachability. Each VR has a VRRP VR instance. One VRRP VR instance is the master, and the other is the backup. Each VRRP VR instance is on a different FP.
- A single Multiservice Switch that has two VRs with the same IP address reachability. Each VR has a VRRP VR instance. One VRRP VR instance is the master, and the other is the backup. Each VRRP VR instance is on a different port on the same FP.

Also, VRRP on one Multiservice Switch VR can interwork with an external router implementing RFC 3768-compliant VRRP on the same Ethernet LAN/VLAN segment.

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Add the <i>Ip</i> and <i>Vrrp</i> components on a designated master router. <b>add Vr/&lt;router_A&gt; Ip Vrrp</b>
2	Add the <i>Ip</i> and <i>Vrrp</i> components on a second Multiservice Switch router. <b>add Vr/&lt;router_B&gt; Ip Vrrp</b>
3	Repeat <a href="#">step 2</a> for each additional Multiservice Switch VR participating in the VRRP virtual router.
4	Activate the changes. See <a href="#">Activating configuration changes (page 334)</a> .

--End--

### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<router_A>	is the instance name of a Multiservice Switch VR on node A.
<router_B>	is the instance name of a Multiservice Switch VR on node B.



## Creating a VRRP virtual router

Create a VRRP virtual router to provide router redundancy.

You can create a VRRP virtual router on an Ethernet protocol port but not on another media protocol port.

On the 4-port 10/100 BaseT Ethernet, 4-port Gigabit Ethernet, and 8-port 10/100 BaseT Ethernet function processors (FPs), only one instance of VRRP per protocol port is supported. Other interior gateway protocols on the same protocol port must be in passive mode.

### Prerequisites

	<p><b>CAUTION</b> <b>Risk of service interruption</b> Activation of provisioning changes to the <i>VrrpPort</i> component could result in a brief service interruption if the <i>VrrpPort</i> component has a current <i>virtualRouterState</i> attribute of master and does not own an IP address (priority not equal to 255).</p>
---	---

### Procedure steps

Step	Action
1	Add the <i>VrrpPort</i> component to the Nortel Multiservice Switch VR acting as the master VRRP VR. <pre>add Vr/&lt;router_A&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;ethernet&gt; IpPort VrrpPort/&lt;VRid&gt;</pre>
2	Set the <i>ipAddresses</i> attribute for the VRRP VR with which it is associated. <pre>set Vr/&lt;router_A&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;ethernet&gt; IpPort VrrpPort/&lt;VRid&gt; ipAddresses &lt;ipaddress&gt;</pre>
3	Set the <i>priority</i> attribute of the master VRRP VR. <pre>set Vr/&lt;router_A&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;ethernet&gt; IpPort VrrpPort/&lt;VRid&gt; priority &lt;priority_value&gt;</pre>
4	Add the <i>VrrpPort</i> component to the Multiservice Switch VR acting as the backup VRRP VR. <pre>add Vr/&lt;router_B&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;ethernet&gt; IpPort VrrpPort/&lt;VRid&gt;</pre>

**Attention:** The VR acting as the backup VRRP VR can be the same as the VR acting as the master VRRP VR.



- 5      Optionally, set the *ipAddresses* attribute of VRRP VR.  
**set Vr/<backup> ProtocolPort/<ethernet> IpPort VrrpPort/  
<VRid> ipAddresses <ipaddress>**
- 6      Set the *priority* attribute of the backup VRRP VR.  
**set Vr/<backup> ProtocolPort/<ethernet> IpPort VrrpPort/  
<VRid> priority <priority\_value>**  

When you have multiple backup VRRP VRs, it is very important to set the priority because it defines which backup VRRP VR is active when the master VRRP VR has a failure.
- 7      For the 2-port 10/100 BaseT Ethernet function processor only, repeat [step 4](#) to [step 6](#) for each additional backup VRRP VR.
- 8      Activate the changes. See [Activating configuration changes \(page 334\)](#).

---

--End--

---

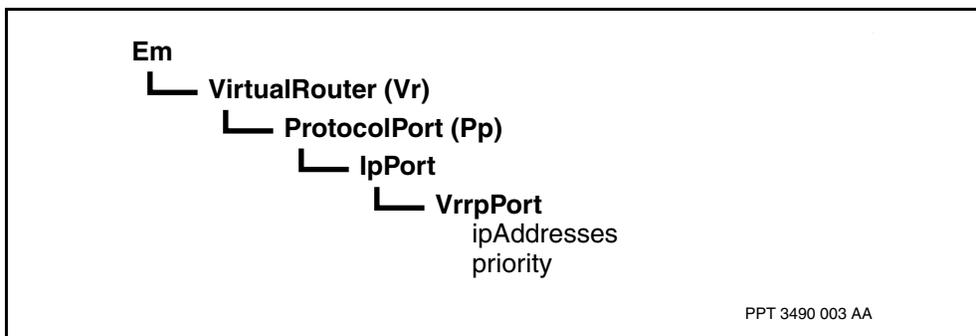


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<backup>	is the name of the Multiservice Switch VR designated as a backup VRRP VR.
<ethernet>	is the instance of the Ethernet protocol port.
<ipaddress>	specifies one or more IP addresses associated with the <i>VrrpPort</i> instance. Typically, this IP address is same as the one for the master VRRP VR
<priority_value>	is a decimal value between 1 and 255. The higher priority is for the master VRRP VR.
<router_A>	is an instance name of a Multiservice Switch VR on node A.
<router_B>	is an instance name of a Multiservice Switch VR on node B.
<VRid>	is the decimal VRRP virtual router identifier between 1 and 255. Only one VRRP/VRid instance is supported per physical interface.

### Procedure job aid

#### VRRP virtual router component hierarchy





---

## Example of creating a VRRP virtual router associated with an Ethernet interface in port mode

Prior to starting this example, ensure that Nodes 1 and 2 have the *LanApplication* component in port mode. For more information about Configuring an Ethernet interface in port mode, see NN10600-821 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Operations: Ethernet Services*.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Set the <i>featureList</i> attribute to include ip and ipvrrp. <b>set sw Lpt/ethernet featureList ip ipvrrp</b>
2	Activate the changes without ending your provisioning session. See <a href="#">Activating configuration changes (page 334)</a> .

For Node 1, complete the following steps:

- 3 Add the *Vrrp* component under the *Ip* component to enable that feature on the virtual router (VR).  
**add Vr/1 Ip Vrrp**
- 4 Add the *VrrpPort 1* component to the protocol port on the master VRRP VR.  
**add Vr/1 ProtocolPort/ethernet1 IpPort VrrpPort/1**
- 5 Set the *ipAddresses* attribute that the VRRP VR is associated with.  
**set Vr/1 ProtocolPort/ethernet1 IpPort VrrpPort/1 ipAddresses <ipaddress\_1B>**

---

**Attention:** The <ipaddress\_1B> is the logical interface IP address defined under, Vr/1 Pp/<ethernet1> IpPort logicalInterface/<ipaddress\_1B>.

---

- 6 This VRRP VR is the master because it owns the IP address set in step 5. Set the *priority* attribute of the master VRRP VR to 255.  
**set Vr/1 ProtocolPort/ethernet1 IpPort VrrpPort/1 priority 255**

For Node 2, complete the following steps:

- 7 Add the *Vrrp* component under the *Ip* component to enable that feature on the VR.  
**add Vr/1 Ip Vrrp**
- 8 Add the *VrrpPort 1* component to the protocol port on the backup VRRP VR.  
**add Vr/1 ProtocolPort/ethernet1 IpPort VrrpPort/1**
- 9 Set the *ipAddresses* attribute that the VRRP virtual router is associated with.



```
set Vr/1 ProtocolPort/ethernet1 IpPort VrrpPort/1  
ipAddresses <ipaddress_1B>
```

- 10 This VRRP VR does not own the IP address set in [step 9](#) because it is the backup VRRP VR. Set the *priority* attribute of the backup VRRP VR to a value less than 255.

```
set Vr/1 ProtocolPort/ethernet1 IpPort VrrpPort/1  
priority <priority_value>
```

- 11 Activate configuration changes. See [Activating configuration changes \(page 334\)](#).

---

--End--

---

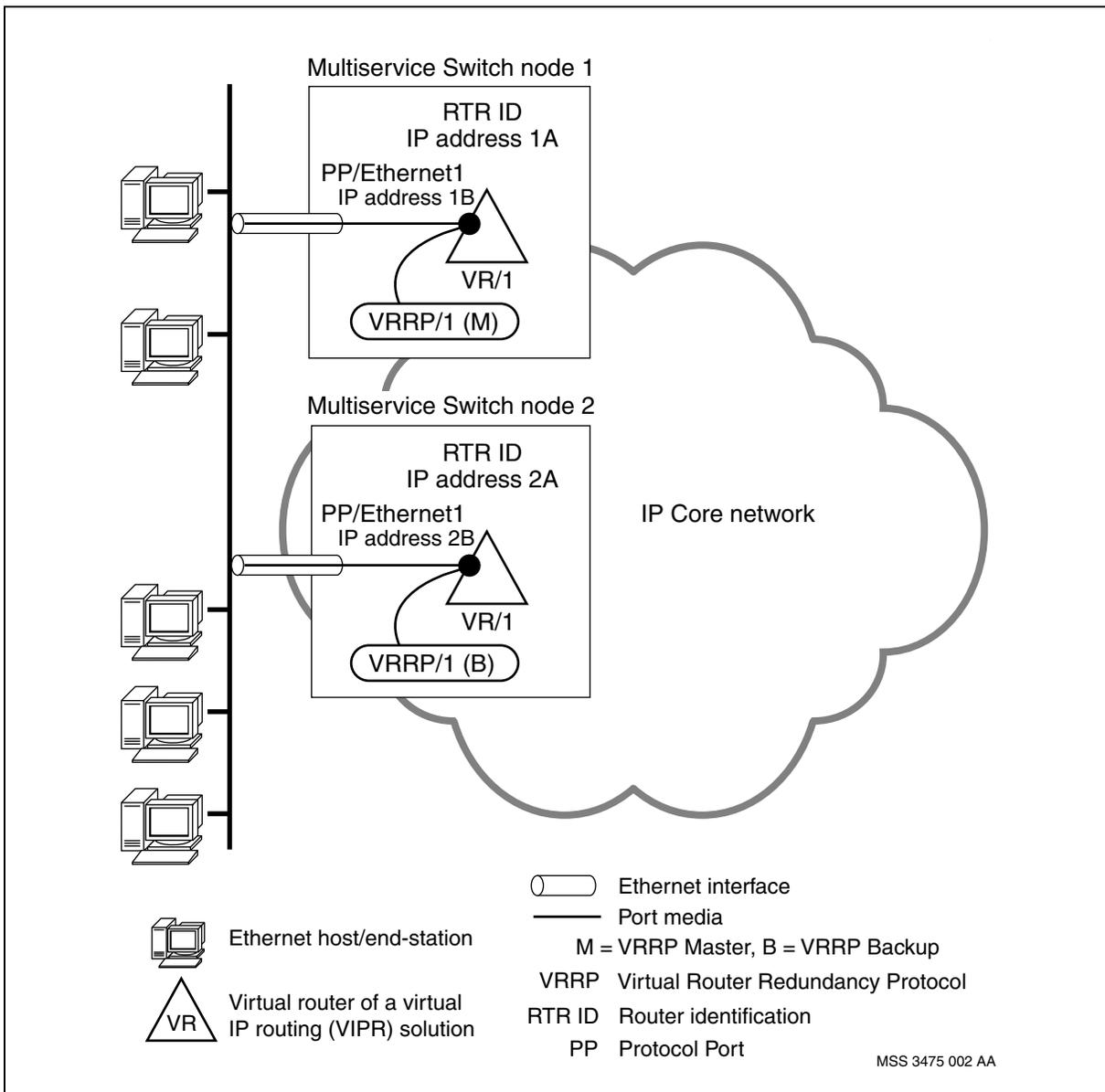


## Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<ipaddress_1B>	is the IP address of the master VRRP VR.
<priority_value>	is a decimal value between 1 and 255. The higher priority is for the master VRRP VR.

## Procedure job aid

Example of creating a VRRP virtual router associated with an Ethernet interface in port mode





## Example of creating a VRRP virtual router associated with a VLAN on an Ethernet interface

Prior to starting this example, ensure that Nodes 3 and 4 have the *LanApplication* component in VLAN mode. For more information about Configuring an Ethernet interface in VLAN mode, see NN10600-821 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Operations: Ethernet Services*

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
------	--------

---

For Node 3, complete the following steps:

- 1 Add the *Vrrp* component under the *Ip* component to enable that feature on the virtual router.  
`add Vr/1 Ip Vrrp`
- 2 Add the *VrrpPort 4* component to the protocol port on the master VRRP VR.  
`add Vr/1 ProtocolPort/ethernet1 IpPort VrrpPort/4`
- 3 Set the *ipAddresses* attribute that the VRRP CR is associated with.  
`set Vr/1 ProtocolPort/ethernet1 IpPort VrrpPort/4 ipAddresses <ipAddress_3B>`
- 4 This VRRP VR is the master because it owns the IP address set in [step 3](#). Set the *priority* attribute of the master VRRP virtual router to 255.  
`set Vr/1 ProtocolPort/ethernet1 IpPort VrrpPort/4 priority 255`
- 5 Activate the changes without ending your provisioning session. See [Activating configuration changes \(page 334\)](#).

For Node 4, complete the following steps:

- 6 Add the *Vrrp* component under the *Ip* component to enable that feature on the virtual router.  
`add Vr/1 Ip Vrrp`
- 7 Add the *VrrpPort 4* component to the protocol port on the backup VRRP VR.  
`add Vr/1 ProtocolPort/ethernet2 IpPort VrrpPort/4`
- 8 Set the *ipAddresses* attribute that the VRRP virtual router is associated with.  
`set Vr/1 ProtocolPort/ethernet2 IpPort VrrpPort/4 ipAddresses <ipAddress_3B>`
- 9 This VRRP VR does not own the IP address set in the [step 19](#) because it is the backup VRRP VR. Set the *priority* attribute of the backup VRRP VR to a value less than 255.



```
set Vr/1 ProtocolPort/ethernet2 IpPort VrrpPort/4  
priority <priority_value>
```

- 10 Activate configuration changes. See [Activating configuration changes \(page 334\)](#).

---

--End--

---

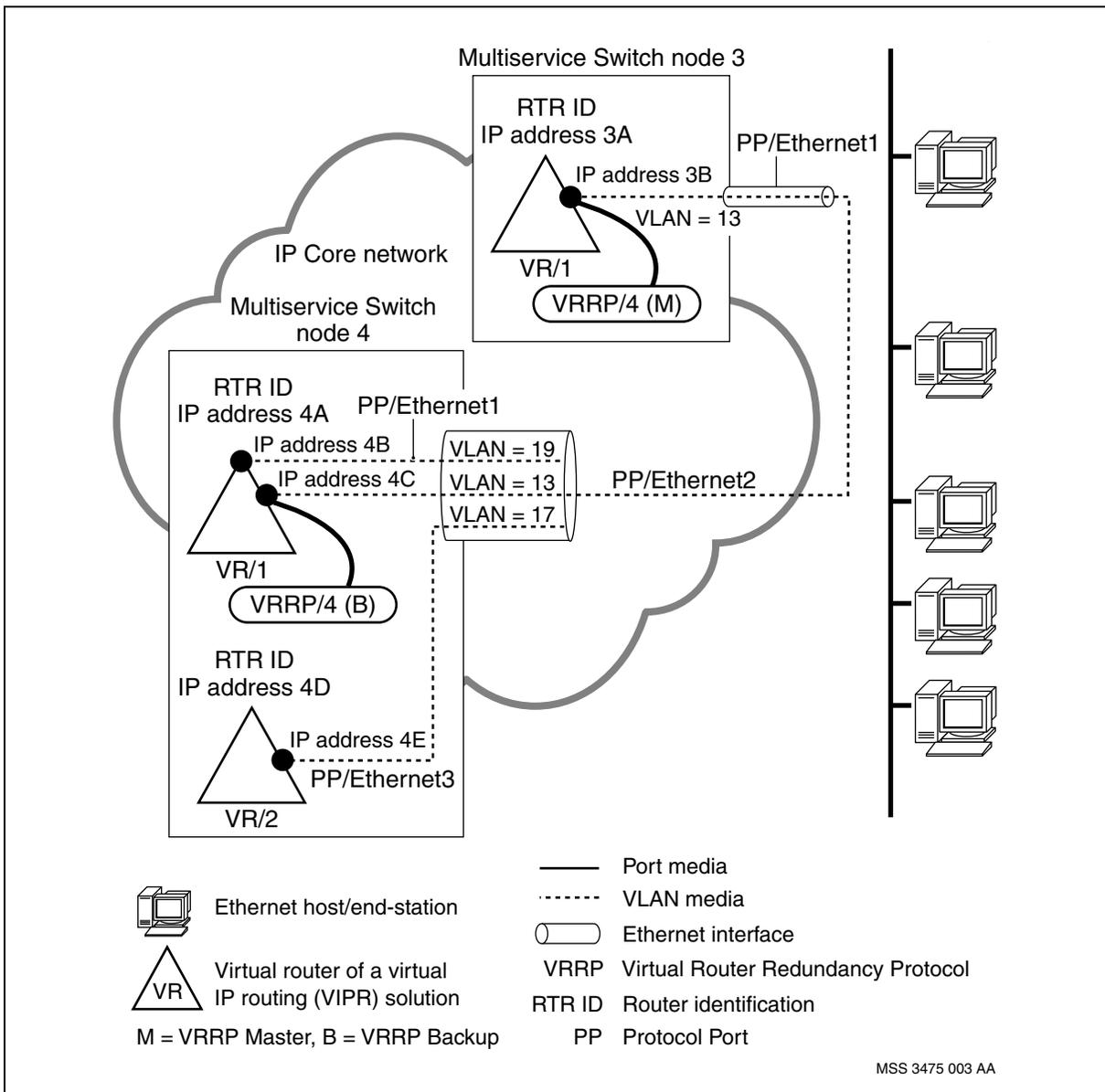


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<ipaddress_3B>	is the IP address of the master VRRP VR.
<priority_value>	is a decimal value between 1 and 255. The higher priority is for the master VRRP VR.

### Procedure job aid

#### Example of creating a VRRP virtual router associated with a VLAN on an Ethernet interface





## Setting the VRRP advertisement interval

Optionally, set the VRRP advertisement interval on both the master and backup VRRP virtual routers (VRs) through the *advertisementInterval* attribute. The master and backup VRRP VRs require the same value.

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Set the <i>advertisementInterval</i> attribute on the master VRRP VR.  <code>set Vr/&lt;router_A&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;ethernet&gt; IpPort VrrpPort/&lt;VRid&gt; advertisementInterval &lt;ad_inter&gt;</code>
2	Set the <i>advertisementInterval</i> attribute on the backup VRRP VR.  <code>set Vr/&lt;router_B&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;ethernet&gt; IpPort VrrpPort/&lt;VRid&gt; advertisementInterval &lt;ad_inter&gt;</code>

---

--End--

---

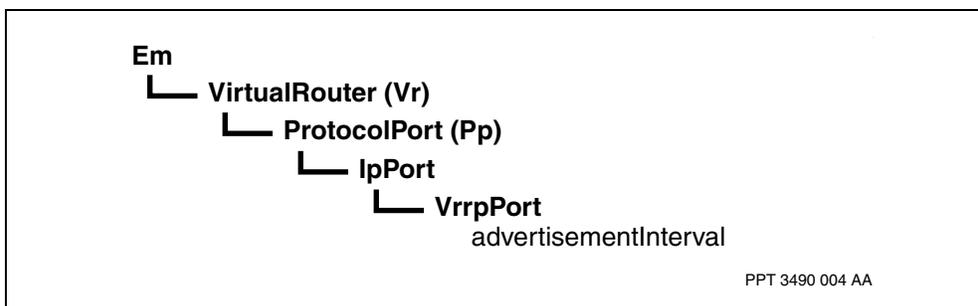


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<ad_inter>	is the advertisement interval time in seconds
<ethernet>	is the instance of the Ethernet protocol port
<router_A>	is an instance name of a Multiservice Switch VR on node A.
<router_B>	is an instance name of a Multiservice Switch VR on node B.
<VRid>	is the decimal VRRP virtual router identifier between 1 and 255. Only one VRRP/VRid instance is supported per physical interface.

### Procedure job aid

#### VRRP advertisement interval component hierarchy





## Defining critical IP interfaces

Define an IP interface on the local router as critical to cause a role change to that VRRP virtual router.

---

**Attention:** Critical IP interfaces are supported on the 2-port 100 BaseT Ethernet, 4-port 10/100 BaseT Ethernet, 8-port 10/100 BaseT Ethernet, and 4-port Gigabit Ethernet function processors (FPs) only.

---

### Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add a <i>CriticalIp</i> component.  <code>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;pp_id&gt; IpPort CriticalIp/ &lt;cip_id&gt;</code>
2	Link the critical IP interface to the VRRP virtual router.  <code>set Vr/&lt;master&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;enet&gt; IpPort VrrpPort/ &lt;VRid&gt; linktoCriticalIP Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ProtocolPort/ &lt;pp_id&gt; IpPort CriticalIp/&lt;vr_name&gt;</code>  or  <code>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;pp_id&gt; IpPort CriticalIp/ &lt;cip_id&gt; linktoVrrp Vr/&lt;master&gt; ProtocolPort/&lt;enet&gt; IpPort VrrpPort/&lt;vr_name&gt;</code>

---

--End--

---

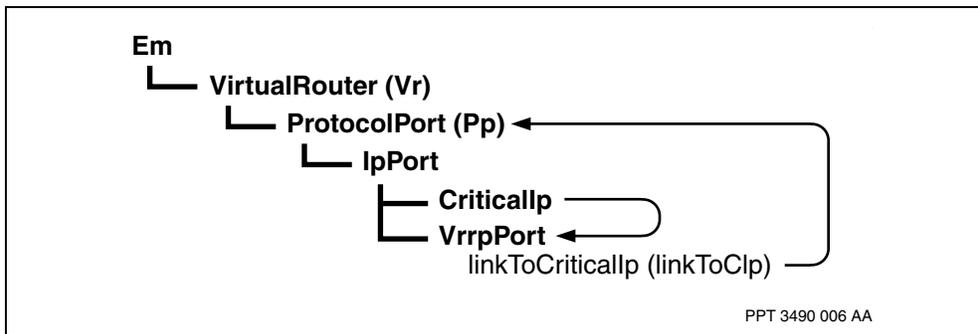


### Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<cip_id>	is the instance (0..255) of the critical IP interface.
<enet>	is the instance of the Ethernet protocol port.
<master>	is the name of the Multiservice Switch VR acting as the master VRRP VR.
<pp_id>	is the instance value assigned to the protocol port running the IP traffic.
<VRid>	is the decimal VRRP virtual router identifier between 1 and 255.
<vr_name>	is the name of the Multiservice Switch VR owning the interface.

### Procedure job aid

#### Critical IP interfaces component hierarchy





---

# Configuring IP CPP on the VR

---

Configure IP control plane protection (CPP) on the VR to protect the Nortel Multiservice Switch against certain denial of service (DoS) attacks on the control plane by monitoring the flow rate of IP packets destined for local IP destination addresses (DAs).

---

**Attention:** CPP is supported on PQC-based FPs only.

---

## Prerequisites

- See the section on CPP in the NN10600-800 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP Technology Fundamentals*.
- The procedure in this section describes configuring CPP software and services only. Basic configuration at the node level (in this case, creating an instance of a logical processor type (LPT), and adding the *ip* and *ipCpp* services to the *featureList* attribute) must be performed first. Use the tasks and procedures in NN10600-550 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Common Configuration Procedures* if you require supporting information or need to provision or reconfigure any node or nodal elements to support the CPP feature.
- For monitoring IP CPP on the VR procedures, see [Monitoring IP CPP on the VR \(page 322\)](#).

## Procedure steps

---

Step	Action
1	Add a <i>Cpp</i> component as a subcomponent of the <i>Ip</i> component. <b>add Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ip cpp</b>
2	Configure the number of packets per second before discard occurs. <b>set Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ip cpp packetsPerSeconds &lt;packets_per_second&gt;</b>
3	Configure the isolation time period.

---



- ```

set Vr/<vr_name> ip cpp isolationTime <isolation_time>
4 Configure the grace period.
set Vr/<vr_name> ip cpp gracePeriod <grace_period>
5 Configure the CPP mode.
set Vr/<vr_name> ip cpp mode <cpp_mode>

```

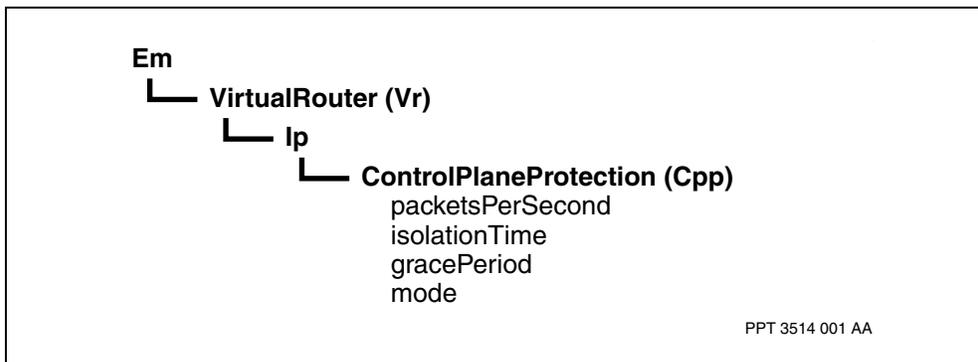
--End--

## Variable definitions

| Variable             | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <cpp_mode>           | is the CPP operational mode: study, protect or disabled. Use study to determine an acceptable traffic rate. Once you learn the rate created and have the appropriate configuration, use protect. Use disabled to pre-configure the feature without enabling the monitoring process. |
| <grace_period>       | is the period over which the average flow rate is measured to ensure that the exceeded traffic flow rate still exceeds the maximum allowed rate. A value of zero in protect mode means that isolation occurs immediately after an excessive flow is detected.                       |
| <isolation_time>     | is the amount of time over which traffic will be discarded once isolation has begun. A value of zero indicates to permanently discard traffic until the card is cleared by an operator.                                                                                             |
| <packets_per_second> | is the flow rate, in packets per second, for the VR's DA, that must be exceeded on a single DA before discard processing occurs.                                                                                                                                                    |
| <vr_name>            | is the name of the virtual router.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

## Procedure job aid

### VR CPP component hierarchy



PPT 3514 001 AA



---

# Virtual media configuration

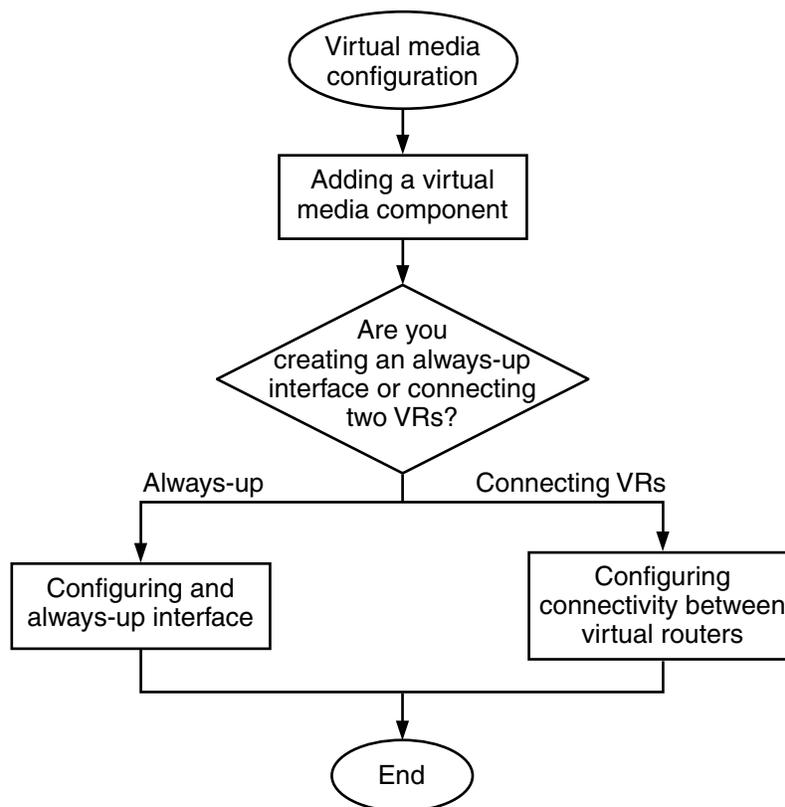
---

Configure virtual media to connect two or more virtual routers on the same Nortel Multiservice Switch node, or to create an always-up interface.

## Virtual media configuration procedures

This task flow shows you the sequence of procedures you perform to configure virtual media on Nortel Multiservice Switch nodes. To link to any procedure, go to [Virtual media configuration procedure navigation \(page 234\)](#).

### Virtual media configuration procedures



PPT 3493 015 AA



**Virtual media configuration procedure navigation**

- [Adding a virtual media component \(page 235\)](#)
- [Configuring an always-up interface \(page 237\)](#)
- [Configuring connectivity between virtual routers \(page 239\)](#)



## Adding a virtual media component

Add a virtual media to provide virtual, rather than physical, next-hop connectivity between VRs, or if you intend to configure an always-up IP interface for RIP, OSPF, or BGP-4.

### Procedure steps

---

| Step | Action                                                                                                                                                             |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Add one or more <i>Vm</i> component(s).<br><b>add Vm/&lt;m&gt;</b>                                                                                                 |
| 2    | If required, add another <i>If</i> component as a subcomponent of the <i>Vm</i> component to interconnect virtual routers.<br><b>add Vm/&lt;m&gt; If/&lt;n&gt;</b> |

---

--End--

---

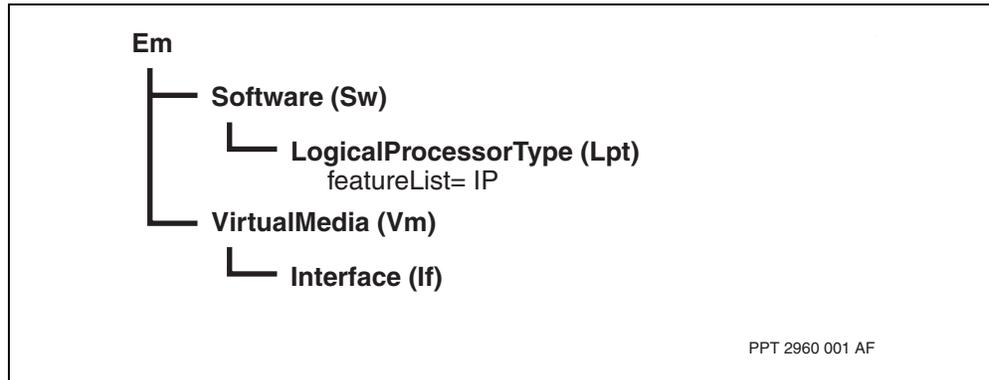


## Variable definitions

| Variable | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <m>      | is the instance value of the <i>Vm</i> component.<br><br>When you add a <i>Vm</i> component, the system automatically creates an <i>If</i> subcomponent, and assigns it an instance value of 0. For example, if you add <i>Vm/0</i> , the system automatically creates <i>If/0</i> ( <i>Vm/0 If/0</i> ). |
| <n>      | is the number you assign to the new instance of the <i>If</i> component.<br><br>You can add additional <i>If</i> components (up to a maximum of 16, including <i>If/0</i> ) to the <i>Vm</i> component.                                                                                                  |

## Procedure job aid

### Virtual media component hierarchy





---

## Configuring an always-up interface

Configure an always-up interface to act as a loopback for routing protocols.

### Procedure steps

---

| Step | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Configure the <i>mode</i> attribute to be always up.<br><b>set Vm/&lt;m&gt; if/&lt;n&gt; mode alwaysUpInterface</b>                                                                                                                      |
| 2    | Link the virtual media interface to the protocol port.<br><b>set Vm/&lt;m&gt; If/&lt;n&gt; LinkToProtocolPort vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; pp/&lt;pp_name&gt;</b>                                                                                  |
| 3    | If you are configuring an always-up RIP interface, add the <i>RipIf</i> component.<br><b>add vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; pp/&lt;pp_name&gt; Ip Log/&lt;address&gt; RipIf</b>                                                                      |
| 4    | If you are configuring an always-up OSPF interface, add the <i>OspfIf</i> component.<br><b>add vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; pp/&lt;pp_name&gt; Ip Log/&lt;address&gt; OspfIf</b><br><b>set vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ip ospf RouterId &lt;address&gt;</b> |
| 5    | If you are configuring an always-up BGP interface, configure the <i>Bgp</i> component.<br><b>set vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ip Bgp RouterId &lt;address&gt;</b>                                                                                  |

---

--End--

---

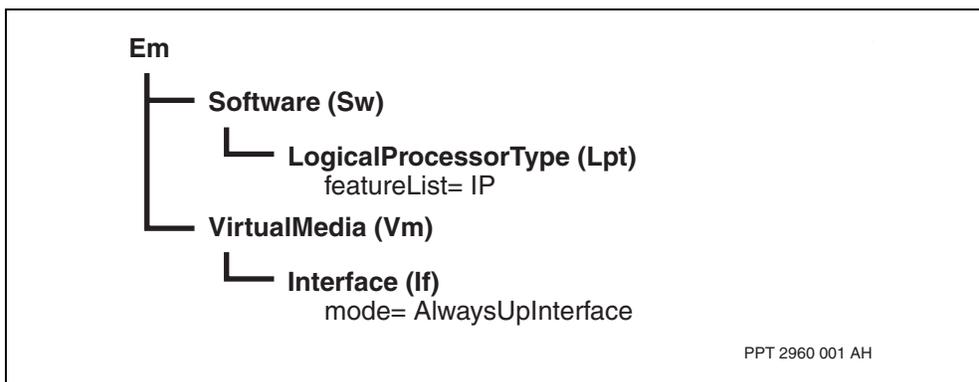


### Variable definitions

| Variable  | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <address> | is the address of the IP address of the virtual media protocol port.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <m>       | is the instance value of the <i>Vm</i> component.<br><br>When you add a <i>Vm</i> component, the system automatically creates an <i>If</i> subcomponent, and assigns it an instance value of 0. For example, if you add <i>Vm/0</i> , the system automatically creates <i>If/0</i> ( <i>Vm/0 If/0</i> ). |
| <n>       | is the number you assign to the new instance of the <i>If</i> component.<br><br>You can add additional <i>If</i> components (up to a maximum of 16, including <i>If/0</i> ) to the <i>Vm</i> component.                                                                                                  |
| <pp_name> | is the name of the protocol port.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <vr_name> | is the name of the virtual router.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

### Procedure job aid

#### Always-up interface component hierarchy





---

## Configuring connectivity between virtual routers

Configure connectivity between two different VRs on the same Nortel Multiservice Switch node to allow them to communicate.

### Prerequisites

- Two virtual routers and their protocol ports have been provisioned. See [Virtual router configuration \(page 89\)](#) and [Protocol ports configuration \(page 95\)](#).

### Procedure steps

---

| Step | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Link one <i>Vm If</i> component to the protocol port of a VR.<br><br><code>set Vm/&lt;m&gt; If/&lt;n&gt; linktoProtocolPort Vr/&lt;vr_name1&gt; Pp/&lt;pp_name1&gt;</code><br><br>To enable connectivity between different VRs, the <i>Vm</i> component instance must be the same for the VRs you want to connect, but the <i>Vm If</i> component instances must be different. |
| 2    | Link the next <i>Vm If</i> component to the protocol port of a VR.<br><br><code>set Vm/&lt;m&gt; If/&lt;n+1&gt; linktoProtocolPort Vr/&lt;vr_name2&gt; Pp/&lt;pp_name2&gt;</code>                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 3    | Set the <i>mode</i> attribute for both <i>Vm If</i> components to enable inter-VR connectivity.<br><br><code>set Vm/&lt;m&gt; If/&lt;n&gt; mode interVrConnection</code><br><code>set Vm/&lt;m&gt; If/&lt;n+1&gt; mode interVrConnection</code>                                                                                                                                |

---

--End--

---

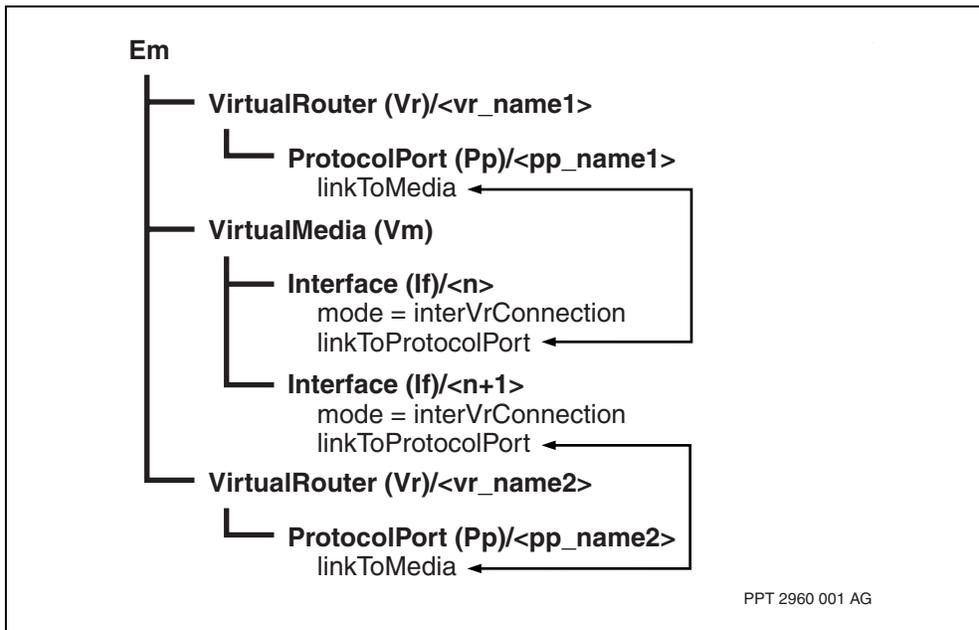


### Variable definitions

| Variable   | Value                                                          |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <m>        | is the instance value of the virtual media component.          |
| <n>        | is the instance value of the interface component.              |
| <pp_name1> | is the name of the protocol port on the first virtual router.  |
| <pp_name2> | is the name of the protocol port on the second virtual router. |
| <vr_name1> | is the name of the first virtual router.                       |
| <vr_name2> | is the name of the second virtual router.                      |

### Procedure job aid

#### Connectivity between virtual routers component hierarchy





---

## PPP (single-link or multi-link) to ATM interworking configuration

---

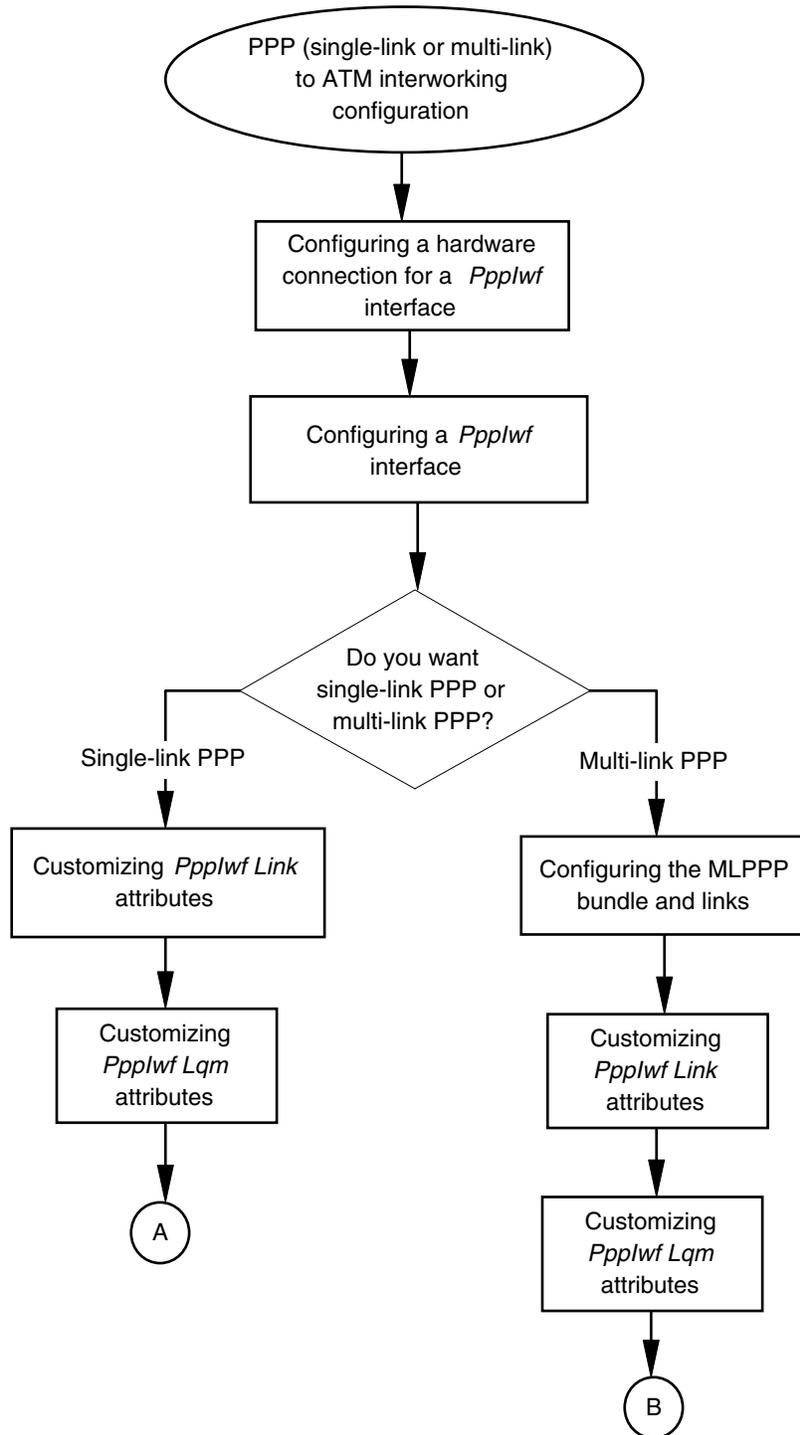
Configure PPP (single-link or multi-link) to ATM interworking on Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400 MSA8 or MSA32 function processors (FPs) to enable IP transport between PPP (single-link or multi-link)-attached user devices and ATM-attached routers.

### PPP (single-link or multi-link) to ATM interworking configuration procedures

This task flow shows you the sequence of procedures you perform to configure point-to-point protocol (PPP) to ATM interworking. To link to any procedure, go to [PPP \(single-link or multi-link\) to ATM interworking configuration procedure navigation \(page 243\)](#).



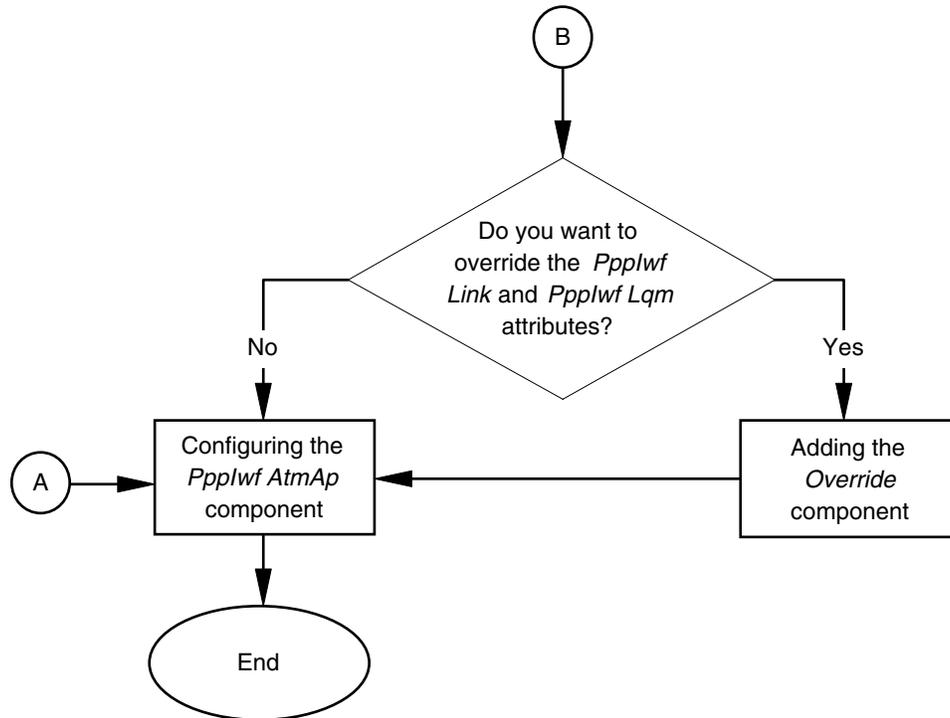
**PPP (single-link or multi-link) to ATM interworking configuration procedures, part 1 of 2**



MSS 4001 042 AA



**PPP (single-link or multi-link) to ATM interworking configuration procedures, part 2 of 2**



MSS 4001 043 AA

**PPP (single-link or multi-link) to ATM interworking configuration procedure navigation**

- [Configuring a hardware connection for a Ppplwf interface \(page 244\)](#)
- [Configuring a Ppplwf interface \(page 246\)](#)
- [Customizing Ppplwf Link attributes \(page 247\)](#)
- [Customizing Ppplwf Lqm attributes \(page 249\)](#)
- [Configuring the MLPPP bundle and links \(page 250\)](#)
- [Adding the Override component \(page 253\)](#)
- [Configuring the AtmAp component \(page 255\)](#)



---

## Configuring a hardware connection for a *Ppplwf* interface

Configure a hardware connection for a *Ppplwf* interface to route IP packets directly to the link.

---

**Attention:** This procedure uses a Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400 node and an MSA32 E1 function processor (FP), as an example.

---

### Prerequisites

- You must ensure that the *applicationVersionList (Avl)* attribute of the node includes *wanDte*. For more information on displaying and adding an *Avl* attribute, see NN10600-550 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Common Configuration Procedures*.
- You must ensure that the *featureList (fl)* attribute of the functional processor (FP) includes the *ppplwf* feature. For more information on displaying and adding a software feature to the *logicalProcessorType (Lpt)* component, see NN10600-550 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Common Configuration Procedures*.

### Procedure steps

---

| Step | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Add a logical processor (LP).<br><br><b>add Lp/&lt;a&gt;</b><br><br>For details on setting the <i>logicalProcessorType</i> , <i>mainCard</i> and <i>spareCard</i> attributes, refer to the procedure on adding an LP and linking it to an LPT in NN10600-550 <i>Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Common Configuration Procedures</i> . |
| 2    | Add a port to the logical processor. In this example, an E1 port is added. The system automatically adds channel 0 when you add a port.<br><br><b>add Lp/&lt;a&gt; E1/&lt;b&gt;</b>                                                                                                                                                               |
| 3    | Configure the timeslots of the hardware connection.<br><br><b>set Lp/&lt;a&gt; E1/&lt;b&gt; Chan/0 timeslots &lt;timeslots&gt;</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

---

--End--

---

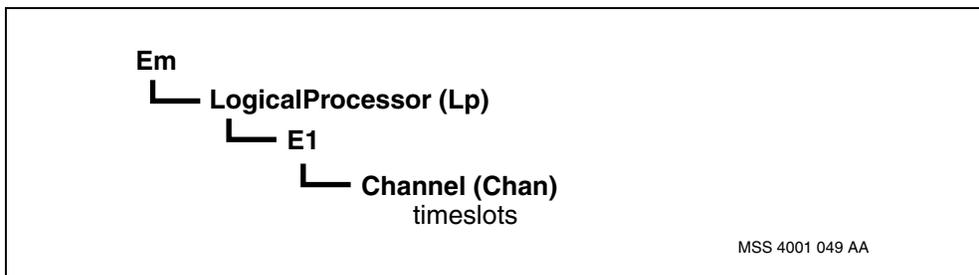


### Variable definitions

| Variable    | Value                                                                         |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <a>         | is the instance number of the Lp.                                             |
| <b>         | is the instance number of the port.                                           |
| <timeslots> | contains the list of timeslots that are used by the <i>Channel</i> component. |

### Procedure job aid

#### Hardware connection for a *Ppp/wf* interface component hierarchy





## Configuring a *Ppplwf* interface

Configure a *Ppplwf* interface to provide a PPP connection between a Nortel Multiservice Switch node and the ATM network.

### Procedure steps

| Step | Action                                                                                                                          |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Add a Ppplwf link level protocol interface application to the root component.<br><b>add PppIwf /&lt;pppIwf&gt;</b>              |
| 2    | Link the PPP service to the hardware component.<br><b>set PppIwf /&lt;pppIwf&gt; Framer interfaceName &lt;interfaceName&gt;</b> |

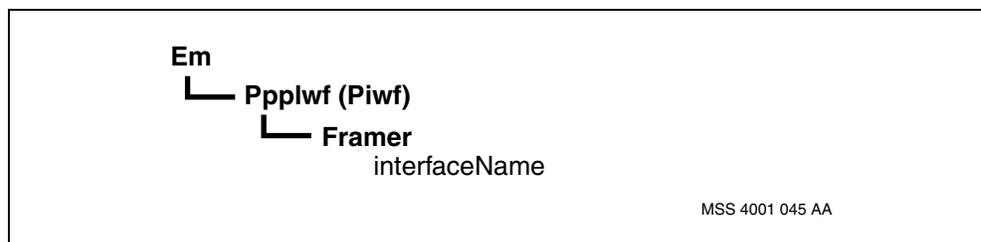
--End--

### Variable definitions

| Variable        | Value                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <interfaceName> | specifies a hardware component name. This attribute defines the logical processor on which the <i>Framer</i> component will run. |
| <ppplwf>        | is the number of the <i>Ppplwf</i> instance.                                                                                     |

### Procedure job aid

#### *Ppplwf* interface for IP traffic component hierarchy





## Customizing *PppIwf Link* attributes

Customize *PppIwf Link* attributes to provide additional capabilities.

### Procedure steps

---

| Step | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Change the maximum receive unit (MRU) negotiated with the peer PPP application.<br><br><b>set PppIwf/&lt;pppIwf&gt; Link configInitialMru &lt;mru&gt;</b>                                                                                                   |
| 2    | Use <i>magic number</i> negotiation to detect looped back <i>link</i> connections.<br><br><b>set PppIwf/&lt;pppIwf&gt; Link configMagicNumber &lt;cmn&gt;</b>                                                                                               |
| 3    | Set the <i>Link continuityMonitor (cntmon)</i> attribute.<br><br><b>set PppIwf/&lt;pppIwf&gt; Link continuityMonitor &lt;monitor&gt;</b>                                                                                                                    |
| 4    | Customize the elapsed time after which PPP attempts to connect with its peer.<br><br><b>set PppIwf/&lt;pppIwf&gt; Link restartTimer &lt;resTime&gt;</b>                                                                                                     |
| 5    | Customize the number of <i>Lcp</i> configuration request retries before entering the stopped state.<br><br><b>set PppIwf/&lt;pppIwf&gt; Link configureRequestTries &lt;tries&gt;</b>                                                                        |
| 6    | Customize the number of <i>Lcp</i> negative acknowledgements (Naks) that the PPP application sends out when it receives <i>Lcp</i> configure requests that are not expected.<br><br><b>set PppIwf/&lt;pppIwf&gt; Link negativeAckTries &lt;negTries&gt;</b> |
| 7    | Customize the number of <i>Lcp</i> terminate request packets a PPP application sends out when it terminates a PPP connection.<br><br><b>set PppIwf/&lt;pppIwf&gt; Link terminateRequestTries &lt;terTries&gt;</b>                                           |
| 8    | Set the quality threshold to a percentage of good packets required to maintain the <i>link</i> connection, when <i>Lqm</i> is enabled.<br><br><b>set PppIwf/&lt;pppIwf&gt; Link qualityThreshold &lt;quality&gt;</b>                                        |
| 9    | Customize the quality window during which <i>Lqm</i> examines link quality reporting (LQR) samples to determine what the quality has been over the history of the PPP connection.<br><br><b>set PppIwf/&lt;pppIwf&gt; Link qualityWindow &lt;window&gt;</b> |

---

--End--

---

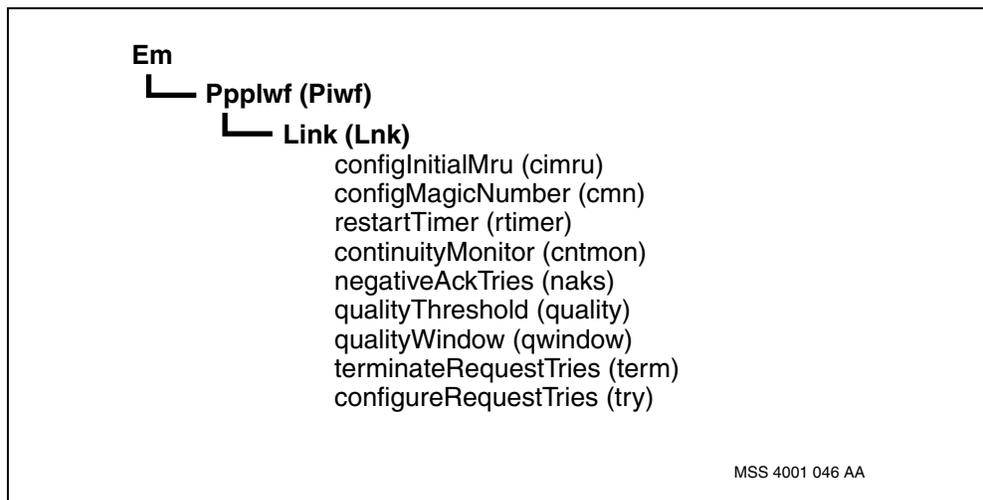


### Variable definitions

| Variable   | Value                                                                                                                      |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <cmn>      | is the magic number negotiation variable, which detects looped back <i>link</i> connections. Value is enabled or disabled. |
| <monitor>  | is the attribute that turn the Link Continuity Monitor on or off. Value is enabled or disabled.                            |
| <mru>      | is the size in bytes of the MRU.                                                                                           |
| <negTries> | is the number of negative acknowledgements the PPP application sends out before entering the stopped state.                |
| <ppplwf>   | is the number of the <i>Ppplwf</i> instance.                                                                               |
| <quality>  | is the number of good packets required to maintain the link connection before the link is disabled.                        |
| <resTime>  | is the elapsed time after which PPP attempts to connect with its peer.                                                     |
| <terTries> | is the number of terminate request packets sent out.                                                                       |
| <tries>    | is the number of LCP configuration request retries before entering the stopped state.                                      |
| <window>   | is the time in seconds of the quality window.                                                                              |

### Procedure job aid

#### *Ppplwf* Link component hierarchy





## Customizing *Ppplwf Lqm* attributes

Customize *Ppplwf Lqm* (link quality monitor) attributes to provide additional capabilities.

### Procedure steps

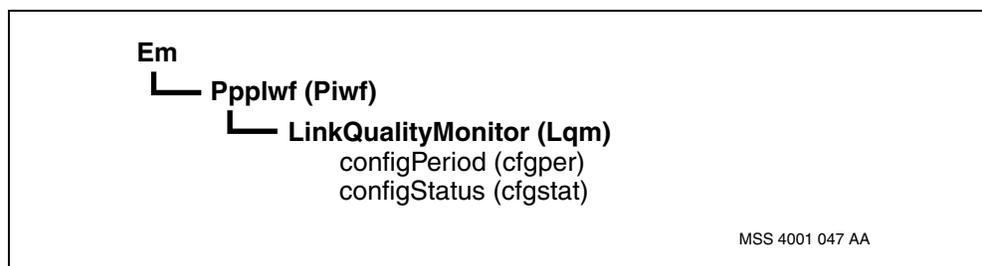
| Step    | Action                                                                                                                                          |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1       | Change the status of the <i>Lqm</i> component.<br><code>set PppIwf/&lt;pppIwf&gt; Lqm configStatus &lt;status&gt;</code>                        |
| 2       | Customize the <i>Lqm</i> reporting period used by the PPP connection.<br><code>set PppIwf/&lt;pppIwf&gt; Lqm configPeriod &lt;period&gt;</code> |
| --End-- |                                                                                                                                                 |

### Variable definitions

| Variable | Value                                                             |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <period> | is the period time in centiseconds.                               |
| <ppplwf> | is the number of the <i>Ppplwf</i> instance.                      |
| <status> | is the <i>Lqm</i> component status. Value is enabled or disabled. |

### Procedure job aid

#### *Ppplwf Lqm* component hierarchy





## Configuring the MLPPP bundle and links

Configure the multi-link point-to-point protocol (MLPPP) bundle and links to aggregate multiple physical links into a single logical data link and to provide increased data rate for the Ppplwf service.

### Prerequisites

- You must ensure that the *applicationVersionList (Avl)* attribute of the node includes *mlppp*. For more information on displaying and adding an *Avl* attribute, see NN10600-550 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Common Configuration Procedures*.

---

**Attention:** To terminate ATM traffic on the same switch where the *Piwf* component is configured, ensure to include the *mlppplwf* feature in the feature list of the destination ATM FP.

---

- You must ensure that the *featureList (fl)* attribute of the functional processor (FP) includes the *mlppplwf* feature. For more information on displaying and adding a software feature to the *logicalProcessorType (Lpt)* component, see NN10600-550 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Common Configuration Procedures*.

### Procedure steps

| Step | Action                                                                                                                                 |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Delete the <i>Framer</i> component.<br><b>delete PppIwf / &lt;pppIwf&gt; Framer</b>                                                    |
| 2    | Add the <i>MlpppFramer (MlFramer)</i> component. You are creating a MLPPP bundle.<br><b>add PppIwf / &lt;pppIwf&gt; MlFramer</b>       |
| 3    | Optionally, set the <i>fragmentSize (fragSize)</i> attribute.<br><b>set PppIwf / &lt;pppIwf&gt; MlFramer fragSize &lt;fragSize&gt;</b> |
| 4    | Optionally, set the <i>ep0Treatment</i> attribute.<br><b>set PppIwf / &lt;pppIwf&gt; MlFramer ep0Treatment &lt;ep0Treatment&gt;</b>    |
| 5    | Optionally, set the <i>configMrru (cmrru)</i> attribute.<br><b>set PppIwf / &lt;pppIwf&gt; MlFramer cmrru &lt;cmrru&gt;</b>            |
| 6    | Set the <i>endpointDiscriminator (epd)</i> attribute.<br><b>set PppIwf / &lt;pppIwf&gt; MlFramer epd &lt;epd&gt;</b>                   |
| 7    | Add the <i>MlpppLink (Lk)</i> component.<br><b>add PppIwf / &lt;pppIwf&gt; MlFramer Lk / &lt;Lk&gt;</b>                                |



- 8 Set the *interfaceName* attribute.  
**set PppIwf/<pppIwf> MlFramer Lk/<Lk> interfaceName  
<interfaceName>**
- 9 If you want to add more links to the MLPPP bundle, repeat [step 7](#) and [step 8](#).
- 10 Activate the provisioning changes. For more information, see [Activating configuration changes \(page 334\)](#).

---

**--End--**

---

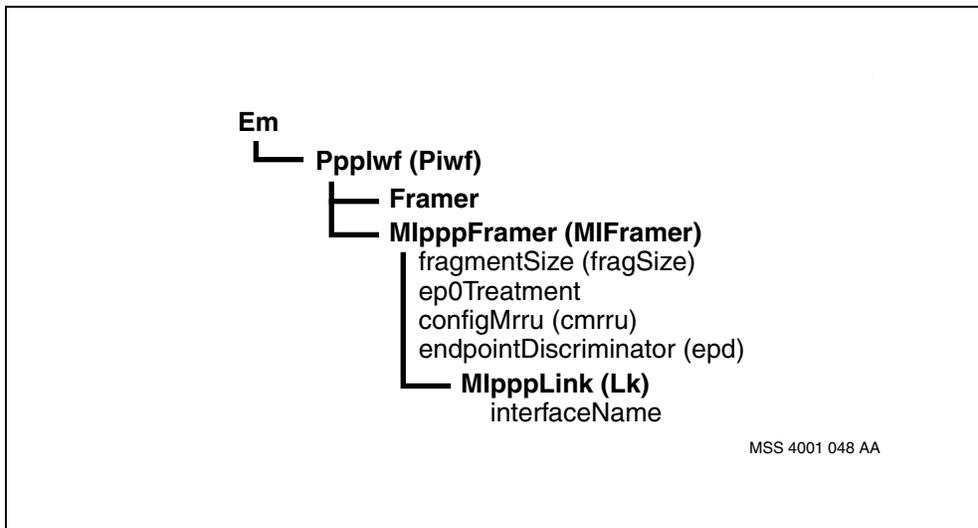


### Variable definitions

| Variable        | Value                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <cmrru>         | specifies the maximum receive reconstructed unit (MRRU) that the local MLPPP bundle advertises to the remote entity.                                                             |
| <ep0Treatment>  | specifies the handling of egress frames sent at the emission priority (EP) 0.                                                                                                    |
| <epd>           | specifies if the endpoint discriminator is used during the configuration phase of a link.                                                                                        |
| <fragSize>      | is the maximum fragment size in octets for the payload. The fragment size does not include the 8 octets for the MLPPP header or the 4 octets for the frame check sequence (FCS). |
| <interfaceName> | specifies a hardware component name. This attribute defines the logical processor on which the <i>MlpppLink</i> component will run.                                              |
| <Lk>            | is the individual link within a multi-link PPP bundle, with a value between 0 and 15.                                                                                            |
| <ppplwf>        | is the number of the <i>Ppplwf</i> instance.                                                                                                                                     |

### Procedure job aid

#### MLPPP bundle and links component hierarchy





---

## Adding the *Override* component

Add the *Override* component to apply a different *PppIwf Link* or *PppIwf Lqm* attribute value to one or more links in the MLPPP bundle.

---

**Attention:** This procedure uses a Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400 node and an MSA32 E1 function processor (FP), as an example.

---

### Procedure steps

---

| Step | Action                                                                                                                                               |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Add the <i>Override (Ov)</i> component.<br><code>add PppIwf/&lt;pppIwf&gt; MlFramer Lk/&lt;Lk&gt; Ov</code>                                          |
| 2    | Set the attribute that you want to override.<br><code>set PppIwf/&lt;pppIwf&gt; MlFramer Lk/&lt;Lk&gt; Ov &lt;attribute&gt;<br/>&lt;value&gt;</code> |
| 3    | Activate the provisioning changes. For more information, see <a href="#">Activating configuration changes (page 334)</a> .                           |
| 4    | Lock the physical port associated with the link.<br><code>lock Ip/&lt;a&gt; E1/&lt;b&gt; Channel1/0</code>                                           |
| 5    | Unlock the physical port associated with the link.<br><code>unlock Ip/&lt;a&gt; E1/&lt;b&gt; Channel1/0</code>                                       |

---

--End--

---

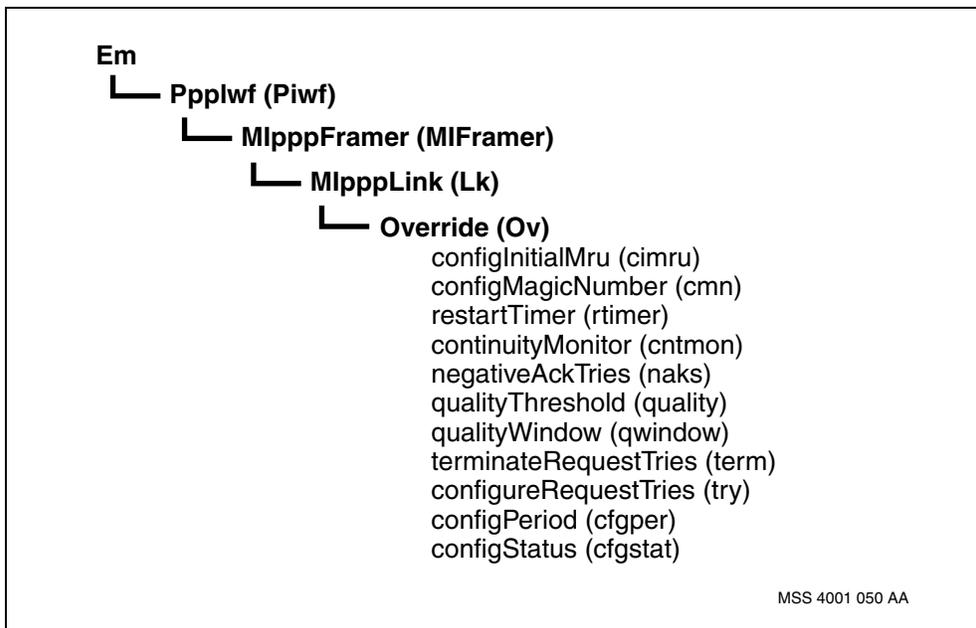


### Variable definitions

| Variable    | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <a>         | is the instance number of the Lp.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <attribute> | specifies the attribute provisioned under the <i>Ppplwf</i> component which value you want to override. The attributes that you can override are included in the procedures, <a href="#">Customizing Ppplwf Link attributes (page 247)</a> and <a href="#">Customizing Ppplwf Lqm attributes (page 249)</a> . |
| <b>         | is the instance number of the port.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <Lk>        | is the individual link within a multi-link PPP bundle.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <ppplwf>    | is the number of the <i>Ppplwf</i> instance.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <value>     | is the value of the attribute that you want to override.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

### Procedure job aid

#### Override component hierarchy





## Configuring the *AtmAp* component

Configure the *AtmAp* component which represents a soft PVC between the PPP and the remote ATM interface.

### Procedure steps

| Step | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Add the <i>AtmAdaptationPoint (AtmAp)</i> component.<br><b>add PppIwf / &lt;pppIwf&gt; AtmAp</b>                                                                                                       |
| 2    | Set the <i>AtmAp addressToCall (addrToCall)</i> attribute to the remote ATM interface.<br><b>set PppIwf / &lt;pppIwf&gt; AtmAp addressToCall &lt;addresstocall&gt;</b>                                 |
| 3    | Set the <i>AtmAp calledVpiVci</i> attribute to that of the connection required to be set up on the remote ATM interface.<br><b>set PppIwf / &lt;pppIwf&gt; AtmAp calledVpiVci &lt;calledVpiVci&gt;</b> |
| 4    | Set the RFC2684 encapsulation type.<br><b>set PppIwf / &lt;pppIwf&gt; AtmAp encapType &lt;encapType&gt;</b>                                                                                            |
| 5    | Optionally, set the <i>maxTransmissionUnit (mtu)</i> attribute.<br><b>set PppIwf / &lt;pppIwf&gt; AtmAp mtu &lt;mtu&gt;</b>                                                                            |
| 6    | Optionally, set the <i>localAddress (localAddr)</i> attribute.<br><b>set PppIwf / &lt;pppIwf&gt; AtmAp localAddr &lt;localAddr&gt;</b>                                                                 |
| 7    | Optionally, set the <i>firstRretryInternal (int)</i> attribute.<br><b>set PppIwf / &lt;pppIwf&gt; AtmAp int &lt;int&gt;</b>                                                                            |
| 8    | Optionally, set the <i>retryLimit (limit)</i> attribute.<br><b>set PppIwf / &lt;pppIwf&gt; AtmAp limit &lt;limit&gt;</b>                                                                               |
| 9    | Optionally, set the <i>atmServiceCategory</i> attribute for the SPVC.<br><b>set PppIwf / &lt;pppIwf&gt; AtmAp Tm atmServiceCategory &lt;atmServiceCategory&gt;</b>                                     |
| 10   | If you are using UPC in your ATM PNNI network, you must set the <i>peakCellRate</i> attribute.<br><b>set PppIwf / &lt;pppIwf&gt; AtmAp Tm peakCellRate &lt;peakcellrate&gt;</b>                        |

--End--



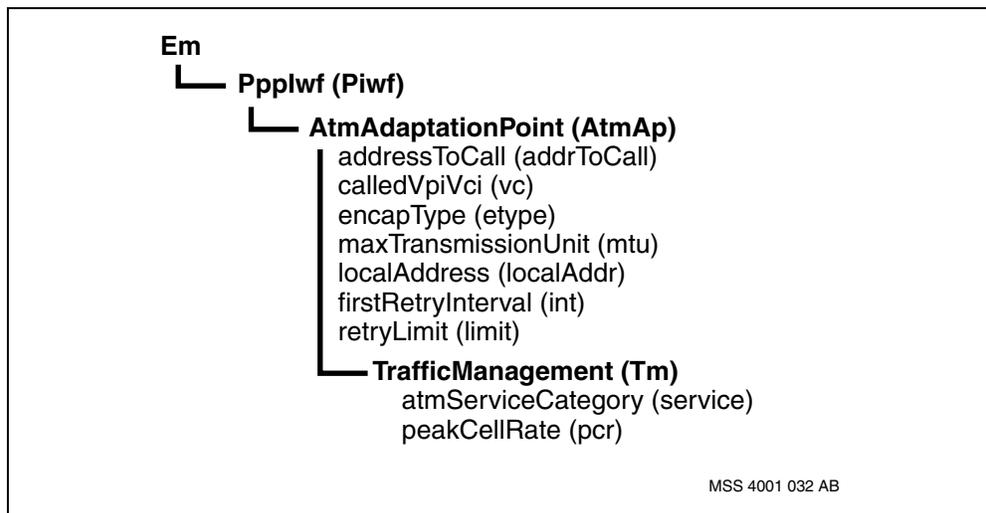
## Variable definitions

| Variable             | Value                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <addresstocall>      | specifies the remote NSAP address which this <i>AtmAdaptionPoint</i> will call.                                                                                                                  |
| <atmServiceCategory> | is the ATM service category.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <calledvpivci>       | specifies the identity of the PVC at the remote ATM node on which the softPVC connection terminates.                                                                                             |
| <encapType>          | is the <i>encapType</i> attribute. This attribute specifies the RFC2684 encapsulation type to be used for the <i>AtmConnections</i> under this <i>PppAtmlwf</i> .                                |
| <int>                | specifies the time to wait, in seconds, before attempting to establish the connection after the first failed attempt.                                                                            |
| <interfaceName>      | contains a hardware component name. This attribute associates the application with a specific link.                                                                                              |
| <limit>              | specifies the maximum number of consecutive unsuccessful connection setup attempts that can be made before further attempts are abandoned.                                                       |
| <localAddr>          | specifies the local NSAP address.                                                                                                                                                                |
| <mtu>                | specifies the size of the largest datagram which can be sent on the soft PVC.                                                                                                                    |
| <peakcellrate>       | is the peak cell rate value.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <pppiwf>             | is an instance of the <i>PppIwf</i> interworking function. This component provides a means for PPP (RFC1661) to interwork with different forms of transport protocols (MPLS and <i>AtmMpe</i> ). |



## Procedure job aid

### *AtmAp* component hierarchy





---

## IP monitoring and testing

---

This section contains information about the following:

- [Monitoring the ATM MPE configuration \(page 259\)](#)
- [Clearing or optimizing an ATM MPE soft PVC \(page 264\)](#)
- [Monitoring the frame relay DTE configuration \(page 265\)](#)
- [Monitoring the Ethernet access media configuration \(page 269\)](#)
- [Monitoring the PPP configuration \(page 271\)](#)
- [Monitoring the IP and virtual router configuration \(page 275\)](#)
- [Monitoring the IP routing management configuration \(page 285\)](#)
- [Monitoring the virtual media configuration \(page 288\)](#)
- [Monitoring the RIP configuration \(page 290\)](#)
- [Monitoring the OSPF configuration \(page 292\)](#)
- [Monitoring the BGP-4 configuration \(page 295\)](#)
- [Monitoring the BGP-4 MD5 Authentication \(page 297\)](#)
- [Monitoring the static route configuration \(page 299\)](#)
- [Monitoring the IP multicast configuration \(page 301\)](#)
- [Monitoring the virtual router redundancy protocol configuration \(page 303\)](#)
- [Monitoring the IP CoS configuration \(page 305\)](#)
- [Monitoring IP DiffServ configuration \(page 307\)](#)
- [Monitoring the IP flow filters configuration \(page 317\)](#)
- [Monitoring the IP tunnel configuration \(page 319\)](#)
- [Monitoring IP CPP on the VR \(page 322\)](#)



## Monitoring the ATM MPE configuration

This section contains the information you need to monitor and maintain the IP over ATM MPE configuration. Issue all commands in operational mode. See [Operational mode \(page 333\)](#).

For information on specific components and protocols, see the following sections:

- [ATM MPE component states \(page 259\)](#)
- [ATM MPE soft PVC component states \(page 259\)](#)
- [Monitoring the AtmMpe component \(page 260\)](#)
- [Monitoring the AtmConnection subcomponent \(page 260\)](#)
- [Monitoring the IIsFwdr component \(page 261\)](#)
- [Testing ATM MPE soft PVC connectivity \(page 261\)](#)
- [Testing ATM MPE soft PVC data flow \(page 262\)](#)

### ATM MPE component states

The table [ATM MPE component states \(page 259\)](#) lists the operational states reported by the ATM MPE service.

#### ATM MPE component states

| Condition                                                                    | States reported                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>ifAdminStatus</i> is provisioned as <i>down</i> or <i>testing</i>         | operational: enabled<br>usage: idle<br>snmpOperStatus: down or testing |
| <i>ifAdminStatus</i> is provisioned as <i>up</i> and the component is locked | operational: enabled<br>usage: idle<br>snmpOperStatus: down            |
| <i>ifAdminStatus</i> is provisioned as <i>up</i> , the component is unlocked | operational: enabled<br>usage: active<br>snmpOperStatus: up            |

### ATM MPE soft PVC component states

ATM connection status is independent of the IP datapath status. If you lock the *AtmMpe* or *AtmMpe Ac* component, the soft PVC will not be torn down, but the IP forwarding will be disabled for the affected connections.

The table [AtmConnection component states \(page 260\)](#) shows the status of IP forwarding for the ATM MPE media in relation to the soft PVC and *AtmMpe Ac* component status.



### AtmConnection component states

| Soft PVC state<br>(AtmMpe Ac SrcPvc/<br>DstPvc) | AtmMpe Ac       |                  | IP forwarding status |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------------|
|                                                 | OSI admin state | operationalState |                      |
| inactive                                        | locked          | disabled         | disabled             |
| inactive                                        | unlocked        | disabled         | disabled             |
| active                                          | locked          | disabled         | disabled             |
| active                                          | unlocked        | enabled          | enabled              |

IP forwarding is not enabled immediately after the soft PVC becomes active, but the active state triggers IP forwarding to become enabled.

### Monitoring the AtmMpe component

The following section describes how to display configuration information and operational statistics for the *AtmMpe* component.

#### Monitoring the AtmMpe component

| Action                                                                                      | Command                                         | Legend                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| List all the AtmMpe instances on a node                                                     | <code>list AtmMpe/*</code>                      |                                                                             |
| Display the status of an AtmMpe instance                                                    | <code>display AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt;</code>           | <n> is the number of the AtmMpe instance                                    |
| Display the attributes configured under the AtmMpe component                                | <code>display -p AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt;</code>        |                                                                             |
| Display the status and attributes of a specific AtmMpe component instance using the ifTable | <code>display Vr/&lt;a&gt; Ift/&lt;b&gt;</code> | <a> is the number of the virtual router<br><b> is the number of the ifTable |
| <b>Attention:</b> -p enables you to list provisionable components while in operational mode |                                                 |                                                                             |

### Monitoring the AtmConnection subcomponent

The following section describes how to display configuration information and operational statistics for the *AtmMpe AtmConnection* subcomponent.



**Attention:** If you lock the *atmConnection* component at one end of an ATM MPE VCC, IP traffic destined for that VCC from the remote end is discarded. The remote VR does not receive notification that the VCC is out of service, and continues to transmit traffic on the VCC even though it is not operational.

### Monitoring the AtmConnection subcomponent

| Action                                                                                      | Command                                                         | Legend                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| List all the AtmConnection instances under the AtmMpe component                             | <code>list AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt;<br/>AtmConn/*</code>                | <n> is the number of the AtmMpe instance                                              |
| Display the status of an AtmConnection instance                                             | <code>display AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt;<br/>AtmConn/&lt;m&gt;</code>     | <n> is the number of the AtmMpe instance<br><m> is the number of the AtmConn instance |
| Display the attributes configured under the AtmMpe component                                | <code>display -p AtmMpe/<br/>&lt;n&gt; AtmConn/&lt;m&gt;</code> |                                                                                       |
| <b>Attention:</b> -p enables you to list provisionable components while in operational mode |                                                                 |                                                                                       |

### Monitoring the IIsFwdr component

The following section describes how to display configuration information and operational statistics for the *Lp IIsFwdr* component.

### Monitoring the IIsFwdr component

| Action                                                                                      | Command                                                    | Legend                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display the status of an IIsFwdr component                                                  | <code>display Lp/&lt;n&gt;<br/>IIsFwdr/&lt;m&gt;</code>    | <n> is the number of the Lp<br><m> is the number of the IIsFwdr component |
| Display the attributes configured under the IIsFwdr component                               | <code>display -p Lp/&lt;n&gt;<br/>IIsFwdr/&lt;m&gt;</code> |                                                                           |
| <b>Attention:</b> -p enables you to list provisionable components while in operational mode |                                                            |                                                                           |

### Testing ATM MPE soft PVC connectivity

The following section describes how to verify connectivity in an ATM MPE soft PVC. Check the state attribute of the *SrcPvc* and *DstPvc* components at either end of the soft PVC. If a soft PVC has been established, both endpoints are



in the active state. If the soft PVC has failed, both of the endpoints are in the inactive state. In the case of failure, you can also determine the cause of the connection teardown and check the number of subsequent setup attempts.

### Monitoring AtmMpe soft PVC connectivity

| Action                                                                                               | Command                                               | Legend                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display the status of the calling endpoint of this soft PVC.                                         | display AtmMpe/<n><br>Ac/<m> SrcPvc state             | <n> is the number of the AtmMpe instance<br><m> is the number of the AtmCon instance |
| Display the status of the called endpoint of this soft PVC.                                          | display AtmMpe/<n><br>Ac/<m> DstPvc state             |                                                                                      |
| Display the reason for the last teardown of the connection at the calling endpoint of this soft PVC. | display AtmMpe/<n><br>Ac/<m> SrcPvc<br>lastClearCause |                                                                                      |
| Display the reason for the last teardown of the connection at the called endpoint of this soft PVC.  | display AtmMpe/<n><br>Ac/<m> DstPvc<br>lastClearCause |                                                                                      |
| Display the number of times the calling endpoint has attempted to reestablish the connection.        | display AtmMpe/<n><br>Ac/<m> SrcPvc retryCount        |                                                                                      |

### Testing ATM MPE soft PVC data flow

The following section describes how to test the flow of data through a soft PVC by monitoring the *AtmMpe* and *AtmIf* component statistics.

### Monitoring AtmMpe soft PVC data flow

| Action                                                                                   | Command                      | Legend                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display the outPackets and outOctets attributes at the calling endpoint of the soft PVC. | display AtmMpe/<n><br>Ac/<m> | <n> is the number of the AtmMpe instance<br><m> is the number of the AtmConn instance |
| Display the inPackets and inOctets attributes at the called endpoint of the soft PVC.    | display AtmMpe/<n><br>Ac/<m> |                                                                                       |

(1 of 2)



---

**Monitoring AtmMpe soft PVC data flow (continued)**

| <b>Action</b>                                                                 | <b>Command</b>                           | <b>Legend</b>                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display the txCell count at each Atmlf component in the path of the soft PVC. | display Atmlf/<i><br>Vcc/<vc> Statistics | <i> is the number of the Atmlf instance<br><vc> is the instance value of the VCC |
| Display the rxCell count at each Atmlf component in the path of the soft PVC. | display Atmlf/<i><br>Vcc/<vc> Statistics |                                                                                  |
| (2 of 2)                                                                      |                                          |                                                                                  |



## Clearing or optimizing an ATM MPE soft PVC

The following section describes how to tear down an active ATM MPE soft PVC connection using the clear command. The clear command also resets the *retryCount* attribute of the calling endpoint.

One reason for clearing an active connection is to optimize the path of the soft PVC. If a path better than the current one becomes available, the soft PVC does not take it automatically. You can clear the soft PVC to force it to take a new path. When the soft PVC attempts to reestablish the connection, the PNNI signaling network will find the better path.

### Clearing the AtmMpe soft PVC

| Action                                                           | Command                                                     | Legend                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Clear the ATM MPE soft PVC at the calling end of the connection. | <code>clear AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt;<br/>Ac/&lt;m&gt; SrcPvc</code> | <n> is the number of the AtmMpe instance<br><m> is the number of the AtmConn instance |
| Clear the ATM MPE soft PVC at the called end of the connection.  | <code>clear AtmMpe/&lt;n&gt;<br/>Ac/&lt;m&gt; DstPvc</code> |                                                                                       |



## Monitoring the frame relay DTE configuration

This section contains the information you need to monitor and maintain the IP over frame relay DTE configuration. Issue all commands in operational mode. See [Operational mode \(page 333\)](#).

For information on specific components and protocols, see the following sections:

- [Frame relay DTE component states \(page 265\)](#)
- [Frame relay DTE remote group component states \(page 266\)](#)
- [Frame relay DTE data link connection identifier component states \(page 266\)](#)
- [Monitoring the FrDte component \(page 267\)](#)
- [Monitoring the StDlci and Dlci subcomponent \(page 267\)](#)
- [Monitoring the Rg subcomponent \(page 268\)](#)

### Frame relay DTE component states

The table [Frame relay DTE component states \(page 265\)](#) lists the operational states reported by the frame relay DTE service.

#### Frame relay DTE component states

| Condition                                                                                                               | States reported                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The <i>FrDte</i> component is waiting for frame relay interface or the hardware interface to become available.          | operational: disabled<br>usage: idle<br>administrative: unlocked          |
| The <i>FrDte</i> component is ready to provide service, but currently there is no DLCI defined on the interface.        | operationalState: enabled<br>usageState: idle<br>administrative: unlocked |
| A lock command is in effect. The relationship between this component and the frame relay interface or LP does not exist | operational: disabled<br>usage: idle<br>administrative: locked            |
| The component is in use, i.e. there is at least one active DLCI defined on the interface.                               | operational: enabled<br>usage: active<br>administrative: unlocked         |
| No new DLCI is available, i.e. total number of DLCIs in use >=1024.                                                     | operational: enabled<br>usage: busy<br>administrative: unlocked           |



### Frame relay DTE remote group component states

The table [Frame relay DTE Rg component states \(page 266\)](#) lists the operational states reported by the frame relay DTE remote group (Rg) component.

#### Frame relay DTE Rg component states

| Condition                                                                                                     | States reported                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The component is disabled because the corresponding FrDte is locked                                           | operational: disabled<br>usage: idle<br>administrative: unlocked  |
| The remote group is ready to provide service, but currently there is no DLCI linked to it.                    | operational: enabled<br>usage: idle<br>administrative: unlocked   |
| This remote group is in use, i.e. there is at least one DLCI in use linked to this remote group.              | operational: enabled<br>usage: active<br>administrative: unlocked |
| No new DLCI is available, i.e. total number of DLCIs in use >= 1024.                                          | operational: enabled<br>usage: busy<br>administrative: unlocked   |
| The lock command is in effect and the linked protocol port is disabled or the corresponding FrDte is locked.  | operational: disabled<br>usage: idle<br>administrative: locked    |
| The lock command is in effect but the linked protocol port is enabled or the corresponding FrDte is unlocked. | operational: enabled<br>usage: idle<br>administrative: locked     |

### Frame relay DTE data link connection identifier component states

The table [Frame relay DTE DlcI component states \(page 266\)](#) lists the operational states reported by the frame relay DTE data link connection identifier (*DlcI*) component.

#### Frame relay DTE DlcI component states

| Condition                                                                                               | States reported                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The DLCI is disabled because the corresponding remote group is locked or disabled, or the link is down. | operational: disabled<br>usage: idle<br>administrative: unlocked            |
| This DLCI is ready to provide service.                                                                  | operationalState: enabled<br>usageState: active<br>administrative: unlocked |

(1 of 2)



**Frame relay DTE Dci component states (continued)**

| Condition                                                                                                                                   | States reported                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| The lock command is in effect. Also the DLCI is disabled because the corresponding remote group is locked or disabled, or the link is down. | operational: disabled<br>usage: idle<br>administrative: locked |
| The lock command is in effect, but the corresponding remote group is unlocked and enabled.                                                  | operational: enabled<br>usage: idle<br>administrative: locked  |
| (2 of 2)                                                                                                                                    |                                                                |

**Monitoring the FrDte component**

The following section describes how to display configuration information and operational statistics for the *FrDte* component.

**Monitoring the FrDte component**

| Action                                                                                      | Command                                         | Legend                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| List all the FrDte instances on a node                                                      | <code>list FrDte/*</code>                       |                                                                             |
| Display the status of an FrDte instance                                                     | <code>display FrDte/&lt;n&gt;</code>            | <n> is the number of the FrDte instance                                     |
| Display the attributes configured under the FrDte component                                 | <code>display -p FrDte/&lt;n&gt;</code>         |                                                                             |
| Display the status and attributes of a specific FrDte component instance using the ifTable  | <code>display Vr/&lt;a&gt; Ift/&lt;b&gt;</code> | <a> is the number of the virtual router<br><b> is the number of the ifTable |
| <b>Attention:</b> -p enables you to list provisionable components while in operational mode |                                                 |                                                                             |

**Monitoring the StDci and Dci subcomponent**

The following section describes how to display configuration information and for the *FrDte StDci* subcomponent and operational statistics for the *FrDte Dci* subcomponent.



### Monitoring the StDlci and Dlci subcomponents

| Action                                                                                      | Command                                                  | Legend                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| List all the StDlci instances under the FrDte component                                     | <code>list FrDte/&lt;n&gt; StDlci/*</code>               | <n> is the number of the FrDte instance                                             |
| List all the Dlci instances under the FrDte component                                       | <code>list FrDte/&lt;n&gt; Dlci/*</code>                 | <n> is the number of the FrDte instance                                             |
| Display the status of an StDlci instance                                                    | <code>display FrDte/&lt;n&gt; StDlci/&lt;m&gt;</code>    | <n> is the number of the FrDte instance<br><m> is the number of the StDlci instance |
| Display the attributes configured under the StDlci subcomponent                             | <code>display -p FrDte/&lt;n&gt; StDlci/&lt;m&gt;</code> |                                                                                     |
| <b>Attention:</b> -p enables you to list provisionable components while in operational mode |                                                          |                                                                                     |

### Monitoring the Rg subcomponent

The following section describes how to display configuration information and operational statistics for the *FrDte Rg* subcomponent.

#### Monitoring the Rg subcomponent

| Action                                                                                      | Command                                              | Legend                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| List all the Rg instances under the FrDte component                                         | <code>list FrDte/&lt;n&gt; Rg/*</code>               | <n> is the number of the FrDte instance                                         |
| Display the status of an Rg instance                                                        | <code>display FrDte/&lt;n&gt; Rg/&lt;m&gt;</code>    | <n> is the number of the FrDte instance<br><m> is the number of the Rg instance |
| Display the attributes configured under the Rg subcomponent                                 | <code>display -p FrDte/&lt;n&gt; Rg/&lt;m&gt;</code> |                                                                                 |
| <b>Attention:</b> -p enables you to list provisionable components while in operational mode |                                                      |                                                                                 |



## Monitoring the Ethernet access media configuration

This section contains the information you need to monitor and maintain the Ethernet access media configuration. Issue all commands in operational mode. See [Operational mode \(page 333\)](#).

### Monitoring the *LanApplication* component

The following section describes how to display configuration information and operational statistics for the *LanApplication* (La) component.

| Action                                                                      | Command                                                                      | Legend                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display the La component                                                    | <code>display La/&lt;v&gt;</code>                                            | <v> is the number of the <i>LanApplication</i> instance                                               |
| Display the physical and protocol ports that are linked to the La component | <code>display -p La/&lt;v&gt;</code>                                         | <v> is the number of the <i>LanApplication</i> instance                                               |
| Display the status of the physical port                                     | <code>display -p La/&lt;v&gt;<br/>Framer</code>                              | <v> is the number of the <i>LanApplication</i> instance                                               |
| Display the Ethernet statistics for the La component                        | <code>display La/&lt;v&gt;<br/>ethernetStatistics</code>                     | <v> is the number of the <i>LanApplication</i> instance                                               |
| Display the VLAN component                                                  | <code>display La/&lt;v&gt; vlan/<br/>&lt;w&gt;</code>                        | <v> is the number of the <i>LanApplication</i> instance<br><br><w> is the number of the vlan instance |
| Display the physical port that is linked to the VLAN component              | <code>display -p La/&lt;v&gt;<br/>vlan/&lt;w&gt;</code>                      | <v> is the number of the <i>LanApplication</i> instance<br><br><w> is the number of the vlan instance |
| Display the Ethernet statistics for the VLAN component                      | <code>display La/&lt;v&gt; vlan/<br/>&lt;w&gt;<br/>ethernetStatistics</code> | <v> is the number of the <i>LanApplication</i> instance<br><br><w> is the number of the vlan instance |
| Display the card and all its physical ports                                 | <code>display lp/&lt;x&gt;<br/>ethernet/*</code>                             | <x> is the number of the logical processor instance                                                   |
| Display all the protocol ports for a specific Vr                            | <code>display Vr/&lt;y&gt; pp/*</code>                                       | <y> is the name of the Vr                                                                             |

(1 of 2)



---

| Action                                                   | Command                                                                  | Legend                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display the statistics for a particular protocol port    | <code>display Vr/&lt;y&gt;</code><br><code>IfTableEntry/&lt;z&gt;</code> | <y> is the name of the Vr<br><z> is the ifindex related to a particular protocol port |
| Display the statistics for all protocol ports under a VR | <code>display Vr/&lt;y&gt;</code><br><code>IfTableEntry/*</code>         | <y> is the name of the Vr                                                             |
| (2 of 2)                                                 |                                                                          |                                                                                       |



## Monitoring the PPP configuration

This section contains the information you need to monitor and maintain the IP over PPP configuration. Issue all commands in operational mode. See [Operational mode \(page 333\)](#).

For information on specific components and protocols, see the following sections:

- [PPP component states \(page 271\)](#)
- [Monitoring the Ppp component \(page 271\)](#)
- [Monitoring the Link subcomponent \(page 272\)](#)
- [Monitoring the Lqm subcomponent \(page 272\)](#)
- [Monitoring the Leq subcomponent \(page 273\)](#)
- [Monitoring the MIFramer subcomponent \(page 273\)](#)

### PPP component states

The table [PPP component states \(page 271\)](#) lists the operational states reported by the PPP service.

#### PPP component states

| Condition                                                                                              | States reported                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A lock -force operator command is in effect.                                                           | operational: disabled<br>usage: idle<br>administrative: locked             |
| The component is unlocked. PPP is not in the Enabled operational state.                                | operationalState: disabled<br>usageState: idle<br>administrative: unlocked |
| The component is unlocked and in service. PPP is in the Enabled operational state.                     | operational: enabled<br>usage: busy<br>administrative: unlocked            |
| PPP is going from the Unlocked state to the Locked state. It is in the process of an orderly shutdown. | operational: enabled<br>usage: busy<br>administrative: shutting down       |

### Monitoring the Ppp component

The following section describes how to display configuration information and operational statistics for the *Ppp* component.



### Monitoring the Ppp component

| Action                                                                                      | Command                                         | Legend                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| List all the ppp instances on a node                                                        | <code>list Ppp/*</code>                         |                                                                             |
| Display the status of a ppp instance                                                        | <code>display Ppp/&lt;n&gt;</code>              | <n> is the number of the Ppp instance                                       |
| Display the attributes configured under the ppp component                                   | <code>display -p Ppp/&lt;n&gt;</code>           |                                                                             |
| Display the status and attributes of a specific ppp component instance using the ifTable    | <code>display Vr/&lt;a&gt; Ift/&lt;b&gt;</code> | <a> is the number of the virtual router<br><b> is the number of the ifTable |
| <b>Attention:</b> -p enables you to list provisionable components while in operational mode |                                                 |                                                                             |

### Monitoring the Link subcomponent

The following section describes how to display configuration information and operational statistics for the *Ppp Link* subcomponent.

#### Monitoring the Link subcomponent

| Action                                                                                      | Command                                    | Legend                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Display the status of a link instance                                                       | <code>display Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Link</code>    | <n> is the number of the Ppp instance |
| Display the attributes configured under the link subcomponent                               | <code>display -p Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Link</code> |                                       |
| <b>Attention:</b> -p enables you to list provisionable components while in operational mode |                                            |                                       |

### Monitoring the Lqm subcomponent

The following section describes how to display configuration information and operational statistics for the *Ppp Lqm* subcomponent.



### Monitoring the Lqm subcomponent

| Action                                                                                      | Command                                   | Legend                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Display the status of an Lqm instance                                                       | <code>display Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Lqm</code>    | <n> is the number of the Ppp instance |
| Display the attributes configured under the Lqm subcomponent                                | <code>display -p Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Lqm</code> |                                       |
| <b>Attention:</b> -p enables you to list provisionable components while in operational mode |                                           |                                       |

### Monitoring the Leq subcomponent

The following section describes how to display configuration information and operational statistics for the *Ppp Leq* subcomponent.

The *Ppp Leq* subcomponent is only available on a Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400 nodes with SBIC-based FPs.

### Monitoring the Leq subcomponent

| Action                                                                                      | Command                                   | Legend                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Display the status of an Leq instance                                                       | <code>display Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Leq</code>    | <n> is the number of the Ppp instance |
| Display the attributes configured under the Leq subcomponent                                | <code>display -p Ppp/&lt;n&gt; Leq</code> |                                       |
| <b>Attention:</b> -p enables you to list provisionable components while in operational mode |                                           |                                       |

### Monitoring the MIFramer subcomponent

The following section describes how to display configuration information and operational statistics for the *Ppp MIFramer* subcomponent.

### Monitoring the MIFramer subcomponent

| Action                                                                   | Command                                        | Legend                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Display the status of an <i>MIFramer</i> instance                        | <code>display Ppp/&lt;n&gt; MIFramer</code>    | <n> is the number of the Ppp instance |
| Display the attributes configured under the <i>MIFramer</i> subcomponent | <code>display -p Ppp/&lt;n&gt; MIFramer</code> |                                       |
| (1 of 2)                                                                 |                                                |                                       |



**Monitoring the MIFramer subcomponent (continued)**

| Action                                                                                                                        | Command                                                     | Legend                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display the status of an <i>MIPppLink</i> instance                                                                            | display Ppp/<n><br>MlFramer MlPppLink/<br><MlPppLink>       | <MIPppLink> is the instance of a PPP link within a multi-link PPP bundle |
| Display the attributes configured under the <i>MIPppLink</i> subcomponent                                                     | display -p Ppp/<n><br>MlFramer MlPppLink/<br><MlPppLink>    |                                                                          |
| Display the attributes configured under the <i>Override (Ov)</i> subcomponent, if <i>Ov</i> is added under <i>MIPppLink</i> . | display -p Ppp/<n><br>MlFramer MlPppLink/<br><MlPppLink> Ov |                                                                          |
| <b>Attention:</b> -p enables you to list provisionable components while in operational mode                                   |                                                             |                                                                          |
| (2 of 2)                                                                                                                      |                                                             |                                                                          |



---

## Monitoring the IP and virtual router configuration

You can perform the tests described in this section to determine if you have configured IP and virtual routers properly. Issue all commands in operational mode. See [Operational mode \(page 333\)](#). For more information, see the following sections:

- [Monitoring the IP component \(page 275\)](#)
- [Monitoring the IpInterfaceEntry subcomponent \(page 276\)](#)
- [Monitoring the IP cache subcomponent \(page 277\)](#)
- [Monitoring the ICMP subcomponent \(page 278\)](#)
- [Testing connectivity using the ICMP subcomponent \(page 278\)](#)
- [Monitoring the TCP subcomponent \(page 280\)](#)
- [Monitoring the UDP subcomponent \(page 281\)](#)
- [Monitoring the IpPort component \(page 281\)](#)
- [Monitoring the Arp subcomponent \(page 282\)](#)
- [Monitoring the BootpPort component \(page 283\)](#)
- [Monitoring the RelayBroadCast subcomponent \(page 283\)](#)

### Monitoring the IP component

The following section describes how to lock and unlock components, display configuration information and operational statistics, and test connectivity for the *Ip* component and its subcomponents.

For more information, see the following tables:

- [Locking and unlocking the IP component \(page 276\)](#)
- [Monitoring the IP component \(page 276\)](#)



#### **CAUTION**

##### **Provisioning session termination**

The *Ip* component can be locked. However, this disables access to IP and all of its subcomponents. It also makes it impossible to further provision using IP applications such as Telnet, Ssh, SNMP, or FTP. IP datagrams are not forwarded while the *Ip* component is locked. Locking of IP and its related protocols is immediate when you issue the lock command.



### Locking and unlocking the IP component

| Action                                                                                                                        | Command                                   | Legend                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lock the Ip component.<br>Locking takes the IP component and all of its configured or dynamic subcomponents out of service.   | <code>lock Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip</code>   | <code>&lt;vr_name&gt;</code> is the name of the virtual router |
| Unlock the Ip component.<br>Unlocking returns the Ip component and all of its configured or dynamic subcomponents to service. | <code>unlock Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip</code> |                                                                |

### Monitoring the IP component

| Action                                                                                      | Command                                       | Legend                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| List the configured components of the IP service.                                           | <code>list -p Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip</code>    | <code>&lt;vr_name&gt;</code> is the name of the virtual router |
| Display the configured attributes of the IP component.                                      | <code>display -p Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip</code> |                                                                |
| Display operational attributes and statistics for an IP component                           | <code>display Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip</code>    |                                                                |
| <b>Attention:</b> -p enables you to list provisionable components while in operational mode |                                               |                                                                |

### Monitoring the IpInterfaceEntry subcomponent

The following section describes how to display operational statistics for the *IpInterfaceEntry (If)* subcomponent. For more information, see the table [Monitoring the IpInterfaceEntry subcomponent \(page 277\)](#).



### Monitoring the IpInterfaceEntry subcomponent

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                        | Command                                                                      | Legend                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display operational statistics of the IpInterfaceEntry (if) subcomponent                                                                                                                      | <code>display Vr /&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip IpInterfaceEntry /&lt;Ipaddr&gt;</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router<br><br><Ipaddr> is the 32-bit IP address assigned to the IP interface |
| <b>Attention:</b> The <i>hardwareAddress</i> attribute displays the MAC address in canonical format. The <i>ncHardwareAddress</i> attribute displays the MAC address in non-canonical format. |                                                                              |                                                                                                                   |

### Monitoring the IP cache subcomponent

The *Cache* component is a dynamic subcomponent of the *Ip* component. It represents the IP cache table on an LP. You can list *Cache* component instances and display operational statistics.

For more information, see the following tables:

- [Monitoring the IP cache subcomponent \(page 277\)](#)
- [Clearing IP cache table entries \(page 277\)](#)

### Monitoring the IP cache subcomponent

| Action                                                                          | Command                                                          | Legend                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| List all <i>Cache</i> component instances                                       | <code>list Vr /&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Cache /*</code>                | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |
| Display operational statistics for a particular <i>Cache</i> component instance | <code>display Vr /&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Cache /&lt;lp_id&gt;</code> |                                             |

### Clearing IP cache table entries

| Action                                    | Command                                                        | Legend                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Clear all entries from the IP cache table | <code>clear vr /&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Cache /&lt;lp_id&gt;</code> | <lp_id> is the instance value assigned in the IP subcomponent to a particular LP |



### Monitoring the ICMP subcomponent

*Icmp* is a subcomponent of the *Ip* component responsible for processing the internet control message protocol (ICMP). ICMP sends control messages to source hosts to indicate special conditions. For more information, see the table [Monitoring the ICMP subcomponent \(page 278\)](#).

You can use the ping (packet internet groper) command to test connections to other IP nodes. The ping command issues an echo request to the specified address and then compares the response to the request. For more information see [Testing connectivity using the ICMP subcomponent \(page 278\)](#).

### Monitoring the ICMP subcomponent

| Action                                    | Command                                             | Legend                                      |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Display the ICMP provisionable attributes | <code>display -p Vr/ &lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Icmp</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |
| Display the ICMP subcomponent statistics  | <code>display Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Icmp</code>     |                                             |

### Testing connectivity using the ICMP subcomponent

The *Icmp* component uses the *ping* verb to test connectivity. *Ping* sends an echo request to the specified IP node, compares the reply with the request, and sends a message to the console indicating the result. ICMP packets can range from 64 to 5000 bytes in length.

**Attention:** If you are transmitting ICMP packets over an ATM VCC with a CBR service category, the default transmission queue size for the VCC limits the packet size to 3680 bytes. To ensure that ICMP packets are not discarded, reduce the maximum IP packet size to 3600 bytes on ATM VCCs with a service category of CBR. ICMP packets are not discarded if the VCC has a service category of UBR.

The retry option specifies the number of times to ping a specific IP address until an echo packet is returned. If after x pings no echo packet is returned, ping reports that the node is not responding.

The continuous option allows the operator to continuously ping an IP address or a range of IP addresses.

The netmask option, also called performing a ping sweep, allows the operator to ping a range of addresses specified by the `-Ipaddr` and `-netmask` options.



The table [Testing connectivity using the ICMP subcomponent \(page 279\)](#) specifies the commands you can use to test connectivity.

**Testing connectivity using the ICMP subcomponent**

| Action                                                        | Command                                                                                                       | Legend                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| View commands related to the ping verb for the lcmp component | help -v(ping) vr ip<br>icmp                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Ping an IP interface                                          | ping<br>-<br>Ipaddr(<IpAddress>)<br>-size(<pingSize>)<br>Vr/<vr_name> Ip Icmp                                 | <IpAddress> is the 32-bit address of the interface to be pinged<br><br><pingSize> is the lcmp packet payload (30 to 20000 bytes) carried in the echo request. If you do not choose this option, the default ping size is 64 bytes.<br><br><vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |
| Execute IP traceRoute on a Multiservice Switch node           | ping<br>-<br>Ipaddr(<IpAddress>)<br>-size(<pingSize>)<br>-traceRoute<br>Vr/<vr_name> Ip Icmp                  | -traceRoute is the option to execute IP trace route                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Set the retry option                                          | ping<br>-<br>Ipaddr(<IpAddress>)<br>-size(<pingSize>)<br>-<br>retry(<retry_number>)<br>> Vr/<vr_name> Ip Icmp | <retry_number> is the number of times to ping the node until it returns an echo packet. The range is 0-9.                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Ping a specific address                                       | ping<br>-<br>Ipaddr(<IpAddress>)<br>-continuous<br>Vr/<vr_name> Ip Icmp                                       | -netmask is the network mask used with the IP address                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| (1 of 2)                                                      |                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |



**Testing connectivity using the ICMP subcomponent (continued)**

| Action                                                                                  | Command                                                                                                    | Legend |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Ping a range of addresses                                                               | ping<br>-<br>Ipaddr (<IpAddress>)<br>-continuous<br>-<br>netmask (<IpAddress><br>) Vr/<vr_name> Ip<br>Icmp |        |
| Set the netmask option                                                                  | ping<br>-<br>Ipaddr (<IpAddress>)<br>-<br>netmask (<IpAddress><br>)<br>Vr/<vr_name> Ip Icmp                |        |
| Stop a continuous ping, or a ping sweep (the netmask option)                            | ping -stop Vr/<br><vr_name> Ip Icmp                                                                        |        |
| <b>Attention:</b> You can also stop a continuous ping or a ping sweep by typing Ctrl-C. |                                                                                                            |        |
| Support ping through certain local IP interfaces                                        | ping -<br>src (<IpAddress>)<br>Vr<vr_name> Ip Icmp                                                         |        |
| (2 of 2)                                                                                |                                                                                                            |        |

**Monitoring the TCP subcomponent**

The following tables describe how to display TCP provisioning, statistics, and connections:

- [Monitoring the TCP subcomponent \(page 280\)](#)
- [Displaying the TCP connection table \(page 281\)](#)

**Monitoring the TCP subcomponent**

| Action                                     | Command                        | Legend                                      |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Display <i>Tcp</i> subcomponent statistics | display Vr/<vr_name><br>Ip Tcp | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |
|                                            |                                |                                             |



### Displaying the TCP connection table

| Action                           | Command                                                        | Legend                                      |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Display the TCP connection table | <code>display Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt;<br/>Ip Tcp Tcpcentry/*</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |

### Monitoring the UDP subcomponent

The following tables describe how to display user datagram protocol (UDP) statistics and listen tables:

- [Monitoring the UDP subcomponent \(page 281\)](#)
- [Displaying the UDP listen table \(page 281\)](#)

### Monitoring the UDP subcomponent

| Action                                     | Command                                            | Legend                                      |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Display <i>Udp</i> subcomponent statistics | <code>display Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt;<br/>Ip Udp</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |

### Displaying the UDP listen table

| Action                       | Command                                                  | Legend                                      |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Display the UDP listen table | <code>list Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip<br/>Udp listen/*</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |

### Monitoring the IpPort component

The following tables describe how to lock, unlock, and display provisioning and operational statistics for the *IpPort* component:

- [Locking and unlocking the IpPort component \(page 282\)](#)
- [Monitoring the IpPort component \(page 282\)](#)

|                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p><b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><b>Locking IP port stops IP routing</b></p> <p>The IpPort component can be locked. However, this stops IP routing on the locked port. IP datagrams are not forwarded through that port while the IpPort component is locked. Locking of the IpPort component is immediate when you issue the lock command.</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|



### Locking and unlocking the IpPort component

| Action             | Command                                                  | Legend                                         |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Lock the IP port   | lock Vr/<vr_name><br>ProtocolPort/<br><pp_name> IpPort   | <vr_name> is the name<br>of the virtual router |
| Unlock the IP port | unlock Vr/<vr_name><br>ProtocolPort/<br><pp_name> IpPort |                                                |

### Monitoring the IpPort component

| Action                                          | Command                                                                         | Legend                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display IpPort LogicalIf addresses              | display -p Vr/<br><vr_name><br>ProtocolPort/<br><pp_name> IpPort<br>LogicalIf/* | <vr_name> is the name<br>of the virtual router<br><br><pp_name> is the name<br>of the protocol port |
| Display the <i>IpPort</i> component information | display Vr/<vr_name><br>Pp/<pp_name> IpPort                                     |                                                                                                     |

### Monitoring the Arp subcomponent

The following tables describe how to monitor and clear ARP entries:

- [Monitoring the Arp subcomponent \(page 282\)](#)
- [Clearing ARP table dynamic host entries \(page 283\)](#)

### Monitoring the Arp subcomponent

| Action                                                     | Command                                                  | Legend                                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Display the ARP static host entries in canonical form.     | display Vr/<vr_name><br>Ip Arp HostEntry/*               | <vr_name> is the name<br>of the virtual router |
| Display the ARP static host entries in non-canonical form. | display -noTabular<br>Vr/<vr_name> Ip Arp<br>HostEntry/* |                                                |
| Display the ARP dynamic host entries in canonical form.    | display Vr/<vr_name><br>Ip Arp DynHostEntry/<br>*        |                                                |

(1 of 2)



### Monitoring the Arp subcomponent (continued)

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Command                                                                  | Legend |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Display the ARP dynamic host entries in non-canonical form.                                                                                                                                                      | <code>display -noTabular Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Arp DynHostEntry/*</code> |        |
| <b>Attention:</b> The <i>physAddress</i> attribute displays the MAC address in canonical form. To view the MAC address in non-canonical form, specify the <i>ncPhysAddress</i> attribute in the display command. |                                                                          |        |
| (2 of 2)                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                          |        |

### Clearing ARP table dynamic host entries

| Action                                                                                                   | Command                                                               | Legend                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Clear all <i>DynamicHostEntries</i> in the ARP table.                                                    | <code>clear vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ip arp</code>                          | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |
| Clear the <i>DynamicHostEntries</i> learned from a specific Ip port that match the specified IP address. | <code>clear vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ip arp dyn/&lt;Ip_address&gt;</code>   |                                             |
| Clear all <i>DynamicHostEntries</i> learned from a specific Ip port.                                     | <code>clear -log(&lt;Ip_address&gt;) vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; ip arp</code> |                                             |

### Monitoring the BootpPort component

The *BootpPort* component contains information about the provisioned BOOTP ports under the *IpPort* component. The table [Monitoring the BootpPort component \(page 283\)](#) describes how to display BOOTP port statistics.

### Monitoring the BootpPort component

| Action                                                             | Command                                                                            | Legend                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Display BOOTP port statistics using the <i>BootpPort</i> component | <code>display Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; pp/&lt;protocolPort_name&gt; IpPort BootpP</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |

### Monitoring the RelayBroadCast subcomponent

The table [Monitoring the RelayBroadCast subcomponent \(page 284\)](#) describes how to display RelayBroadCast statistics.



---

### Monitoring the RelayBroadCast subcomponent

| Action                                                                           | Command                                                    | Legend                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Display the <i>RelayBroadCast</i> subcomponent global broadcast counter          | display Vr /<vr_name><br>Ip RelayBC                        | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |
| Display the <i>RelayBroadCast</i> subcomponent counters on individual interfaces | display Vr /<vr_name><br>ProtocolPort/<br><pp_name> IpPort | <pp_name> is the name of the protocol port  |
|                                                                                  |                                                            |                                             |



## Monitoring the IP routing management configuration

Nortel Multiservice Switch nodes store routing information in the IP forwarding table and the routing database. The forwarding table provides information on the routes with the best metric. The routing database provides all sources of routing information. This section describes how to monitor the IP forwarding table and the routing database.

For more information, see the following tables:

- [Monitoring the Ip ForwardTable component \(page 285\)](#)
- [Monitoring the Ip RouteDataBaseEntry component \(page 287\)](#)

### Monitoring the Ip ForwardTable component

| Action                                                                                               | Command                                                                                                        | Legend                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display the forwarding table                                                                         | <code>display Vr /&lt;vr_name&gt;<br/>Ip Fwd/*, *, *, *</code>                                                 | <vr_name> is the wildcard (*), to display the routes for all virtual routers or the name of a virtual router, to display the routes for only that virtual router                                                                                                                                                     |
| Display the routes in the forwarding table covered by a particular IP address or subnet <sup>1</sup> | <code>display Vr /&lt;vr_name&gt;<br/>Ip Fwd/<br/>&lt;a&gt;.&lt;b&gt;.&lt;c&gt;.&lt;d&gt;, *, *<br/>, *</code> | <vr_name> is the wildcard (*), to display the routes for all virtual routers or the name of a virtual router, to display the routes for only that virtual router<br><br><a>.<b>.<c>.<d> are the octets in an IP address. They can be numerals or, in the case of a subnet, the wildcard (*). For example, 47.138.*.* |

(1 of 2)



**Monitoring the Ip ForwardTable component (continued)**

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Command                                                                                              | Legend                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display the routes in the forwarding table covered by a particular IP address or subnet <sup>1</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <pre>display Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Fwd/ &lt;a&gt; [.&lt;b&gt;.&lt;c&gt;.&lt;d&gt;] , * , * , *</pre> | <p>&lt;vr_name&gt; is the wildcard (*), to display the routes for all virtual routers or the name of a virtual router, to display the routes for only that virtual router</p> <p>&lt;a&gt; is the first octet in an IP address. It can be numerals or, for all routes, the wildcard (*).</p> <p>[.&lt;b&gt;.&lt;c&gt;.&lt;d&gt;] are the remaining octets in an IP address. They can be numerals or wildcards (*). Once you enter a wildcard, you do not need to complete the address. For example, * instead of *.*.*; 47.138.* instead of 47.138.*</p> |
| <p><sup>1</sup> When a route is displayed using the command "d vr/x ip fwd/a,b,c,d" and no wildcards, the route is displayed even if it exists in the RDB and was not selected for the forwarding table. Without the use of wildcards, the route is displayed from the RTM's routing table before the routes are selected for the FWD table. However, if the route is displayed using the wildcard, for example, d vr/x ip fwd/* or d vr/x ip fwd/10.1.1.0,*,* , then the route is displayed from the GCM's routing table, the forwarding table.</p> |                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <p>(2 of 2)</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |



### Monitoring the Ip RouteDataBaseEntry component

| Action                                                                                                                 | Command                                                                                                                                                    | Legend                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display the <i>Ip RouteDataBaseEntry</i> component                                                                     | <code>display Vr /&lt;vr_name&gt;<br/>Ip Rdb /*</code>                                                                                                     | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Display the routes in the routing table covered by a particular IP address or subnet for a particular routing protocol | <code>display Vr /&lt;vr_name&gt;<br/>Ip Rdb /<br/>&lt;a&gt; [.&lt;b&gt;.&lt;c&gt;.&lt;d&gt;] , *<br/>, * , * (protocol=&lt;pro_&lt;br&gt;name&gt;)</code> | <vr_name> is the wildcard (*), to display the routes for all virtual routers or the name of a virtual router, to display the routes for only that virtual router<br><br><a> is the first octet in an IP address. It can be numerals or, for all routes, the wildcard (*).<br><br>[.<b>.<c>.<d>] are the remaining octets in an IP address. They can be numerals or wildcards (*). Once you enter a wildcard, you do not need to complete the address. For example, * instead of *.*.*; 47.138.* instead of 47.138.*.*<br><br><pro_name> is the name of the routing protocol. For example, <i>ospf</i> . |



## Monitoring the virtual media configuration

The *VirtualMedia (Vm)* component is an optional root component that you can provision to provide connectivity between VRs or to create an always-up IP interface for RIP, OSPF, or BGP-4. The *Vm* component has no provisionable or operational attributes. The *Vm* component has one subcomponent, the *Interface (If)* component.

For more information, see the following tables:

- [Locking and unlocking the Vm If component \(page 288\)](#)
- [Monitoring the Vm component \(page 288\)](#)
- [Monitoring the Vm If component \(page 289\)](#)

### Locking and unlocking the Vm If component

| Action                                                                                                     | Command                                       | Legend                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Lock an instance of the <i>Vm If</i> component.                                                            | <code>lock Vm/&lt;m&gt; If/&lt;n&gt;</code>   | <m> is the instance value of the <i>Vm</i> component |
| Unlock an instance of the <i>Vm If</i> component.                                                          | <code>unlock Vm/&lt;m&gt; If/&lt;n&gt;</code> |                                                      |
| <b>Attention:</b> Only the <i>Vm If</i> component can be locked. The <i>Vm</i> component cannot be locked. |                                               |                                                      |

### Monitoring the Vm component

| Action                                         | Command                           | Legend                                               |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Display all <i>Vm</i> component instances      | <code>display Vm/*</code>         |                                                      |
| Display specific <i>Vm</i> component instances | <code>display Vm/&lt;m&gt;</code> | <m> is the instance value of the <i>Vm</i> component |



### Monitoring the Vm If component

| Action                                                                                                                                 | Command                                           | Legend |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Display all <i>If</i> component instances for a <i>Vm</i> component in tabular format.                                                 | <code>display Vm/&lt;m&gt; If/*</code>            |        |
| Display all <i>If</i> component instances for a <i>Vm</i> component in non-tabular format.                                             | <code>display -noTabular Vm/&lt;m&gt; If/*</code> |        |
| Display all the operational attributes for all instances of the <i>Vm</i> and <i>If</i> components                                     | <code>display -o Vm/* If/*</code>                 |        |
| Display all the operational attributes for a specific instance of the <i>Vm</i> component and all instances of its <i>If</i> component | <code>display -o Vm/&lt;m&gt; If/*</code>         |        |



## Monitoring the RIP configuration

The following tables describe how to lock and unlock the *Ip Rip* component, monitor the *Ip Rip* and *Ip Rip If* components, and monitor RIP import and export policy. Issue all commands in operational mode. See [Operational mode \(page 333\)](#).

- [Locking and unlocking the Rip component \(page 290\)](#)
- [Monitoring the Rip component \(page 290\)](#)
- [Monitoring the Rip If component \(page 291\)](#)
- [Monitoring RIP import and export policy \(page 291\)](#)

### Locking and unlocking the Rip component

| Action                                                                                    | Command                    | Legend                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Lock the <i>Ip Rip</i> component to take it and all related subcomponents out of service. | lock Vr/<vr_name> Ip Rip   | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |
| Unlock the <i>Ip Rip</i> component to return it all related subcomponents to service.     | unlock Vr/<vr_name> Ip Rip | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |

### Monitoring the Rip component

| Action                                                       | Command                        | Legend                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Display configurable attributes for the <i>Rip</i> component | display -p Vr/<vr_name> Ip Rip | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |
| Display operational statistics for the <i>Rip</i> component  | display Vr/<vr_name> Ip Rip    |                                             |



### Monitoring the Rip If component

| Action                                                         | Command                                                                                                                   | Legend                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Display configurable attributes for the <i>RipIf</i> component | <code>display -p Vr/<br/>&lt;vr_name&gt; Pp/<br/>&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort<br/>LogicalIf/<br/>&lt;ipAddress&gt; RipIf</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |
| Display operational attributes for the <i>Rip If</i> component | <code>display -p Vr/<br/>&lt;vr_name&gt; Pp/<br/>&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort<br/>LogicalIf/<br/>&lt;ipAddress&gt; RipIf</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |

### Monitoring RIP import and export policy

| Action                                                                                                | Command                                                                          | Legend                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display a RIP import policy                                                                           | <code>display Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt;<br/>Ip Rip Import/<br/>&lt;import_id&gt;</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router<br><br><import_id> is the instance/identifier of the particular import policy |
| Display a RIP export policy                                                                           | <code>display Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt;<br/>Ip Rip Export/<br/>&lt;export_id&gt;</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router<br><br><export_id> is the instance/identifier of the particular export policy |
| <b>Attention:</b> To display all import or export polices, use an asterisk (*) as the instance value. |                                                                                  |                                                                                                                           |



## Monitoring the OSPF configuration

The following tables describe how to lock and unlock the Ip Ospf component, monitor the Ospf and OspfIf components and subcomponents, and monitor the OSPF export policy. Issue all commands in operational mode. See [Operational mode \(page 333\)](#).

- [Locking and unlocking the Ospf component \(page 292\)](#)
- [Monitoring the Ospf component \(page 292\)](#)
- [Monitoring the OspfIf component \(page 293\)](#)
- [Monitoring OSPF export policy \(page 293\)](#)
- [Monitoring OSPF areas \(page 293\)](#)
- [Monitoring OSPF hosts \(page 293\)](#)
- [Monitoring OSPF virtual links \(page 294\)](#)
- [Monitoring OSPF stub areas \(page 294\)](#)
- [Monitoring OSPF neighbors \(page 294\)](#)
- [Monitoring the OSPF link state database \(page 294\)](#)

### Locking and unlocking the Ospf component

| Action                                                                           | Command                                        | Legend                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Lock the Ospf component to take it and all related subcomponents out of service. | <code>lock Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf</code>   | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |
| Unlock the Ospf component to return it and all related subcomponents to service. | <code>unlock Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |

### Monitoring the Ospf component

| Action                                                   | Command                                                                                                                 | Legend                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display the Ip Ospf subcomponent operational attributes. | <code>display Vr/<br/>&lt;vr_name&gt; Pp/<br/>&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort<br/>logicalIf/<br/>&lt;IpAddress&gt; OspfIf</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router<br><pp_name> is the name of the protocol port<br><IpAddress> is the 32-bit Ip address of the interface |



### Monitoring the Ospfif component

| Action                                                                        | Command                                                                                                                                          | Legend                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display a particular Ospfif component (under the IpPort LogicalIf component). | <code>display -p Vr/<br/>&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf<br/>ProtocolPort/<br/>&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort<br/>LogicalIf/<br/>&lt;IpAddress&gt; OspfIf</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router<br><br><pp_name> is the name of the protocol port<br><br><IpAddress> is the 32-bit Ip address of the interface |

### Monitoring OSPF export policy

| Action                            | Command                                                              | Legend                                      |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Display all OSPF export policies. | <code>display -p Vr/<br/>&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf<br/>export/*</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |

### Monitoring OSPF areas

| Action                                                                     | Command                                                                 | Legend                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Display all provisioned OSPF areas attached to this Vr component instance. | <code>display -d Vr/<br/>&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf<br/>AreaEntry/*</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |
| Display all OSPF aggregate areas.                                          | <code>display -d Vr/<br/>&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf<br/>aggregate/*</code> |                                             |

### Monitoring OSPF hosts

| Action                                   | Command                                                            | Legend                                      |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| display Ip OSPF provisioned host entries | <code>display -d Vr/<br/>&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip Ospf<br/>host/*</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |



### Monitoring OSPF virtual links

| Action                                      | Command                                      | Legend                                         |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Display all provisioned OSPF virtual links. | display Vr/<br><vr_name> Ip Ospf<br>virtif/* | <vr_name> is the name<br>of the virtual router |
| Display OSPF virtual link operational data. | display Vr/<br><vr_name> Ip Ospf<br>virtif/* |                                                |

### Monitoring OSPF stub areas

| Action                   | Command                                       | Legend                                         |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Display OSPF stub areas. | display -d Vr/<br><vr_name> Ip Ospf<br>stub/* | <vr_name> is the name<br>of the virtual router |

### Monitoring OSPF neighbors

| Action                                                                                                         | Command                                        | Legend                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Display all OSPF neighbors that have been provisioned or dynamically discovered using the OSPF hello protocol. | display Vr/<br><vr_name> Ip Ospf<br>neighbor/* | <vr_name> is the name<br>of the virtual router |

### Monitoring the OSPF link state database

| Action                                         | Command                                       | Legend                                         |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Display the OSPF link state database.          | display Vr/<br><vr_name> Ip Ospf<br>Lsdb/*    | <vr_name> is the name<br>of the virtual router |
| Display the OSPF external link state database. | display Vr/<br><vr_name> Ip Ospf<br>extLsdb/* |                                                |



## Monitoring the BGP-4 configuration

The following tables describe how to lock and unlock the *bgp* component, display BGP operational statistics, and display BGP routes in the databases. Issue all commands in operational mode. See [Operational mode \(page 333\)](#).

- [Locking and unlocking the Bgp and Bgp Peer components \(page 295\)](#)
- [Monitoring the Bgp and Bgp Peer components \(page 295\)](#)
- [Monitoring routes in the BGP routing information base \(RIB\) \(page 296\)](#)

### Locking and unlocking the Bgp and Bgp Peer components

| Action                                                         | Command                                      | Legend                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Disable a BGP-4 instance for a particular virtual router (VR). | lock Vr/<vr_name> Ip Bgp                     | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |
| Put the BGP-4 instance back in service.                        | unlock Vr/<vr_name> Ip Bgp                   |                                             |
| Shut down a BGP-4 peer connection.                             | lock Vr/<vr_name> Ip Bgp Peer/<peer>         |                                             |
| Re-establish the BGP-4 peer connection.                        | unlock Vr/<vr_name> Ip Bgp Peer/<IP_address> |                                             |

### Monitoring the Bgp and Bgp Peer components

| Action                                                      | Command                                 | Legend                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display operational statistics for the BGP-4 instance.      | display Vr/<vr_name> Ip Bgp             | <vr_name> is the instance identifier of the parent VR.                                                   |
| List all of the subcomponents for the BGP-4 instance.       | list Vr/<vr_name> Ip Bgp                |                                                                                                          |
| Display statistics for a BGP-4 peer under a BGP-4 instance. | display Vr/<vr_name> Ip Bgp Peer/<peer> | <peer> is the IP address of the BGP-4 peer. To specify all BGP-4 peers under the BGP-4 instance, enter * |



**Monitoring routes in the BGP routing information base (RIB)**

| Action                                                                                                     | Command                                                 | Legend                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display information for one or more routes received from a BGP-4 peer.                                     | display Vr /<vr_name><br>Ip Bgp Indb/<br><in_entry>     | <vr_name> is the instance identifier of the parent VR.<br><br><in_entry> specifies the input database entry. To specify all entries in the Indb, enter *. |
| Display information for one or more entries in the BGP-4 local database.                                   | display Vr /<vr_name><br>Ip Bgp Localdb/<br><loc_entry> | <loc_entry> specifies the local database entry. To specify all entries in the Localdb, enter *.                                                           |
| Display information for one or more entries in the BGP-4 output database.                                  | display Vr /<vr_name><br>Ip Bgp Outdb/<br><out_entry>   | <out_entry> specifies the output database entry. To specify all entries in the Outdb, enter *.                                                            |
| <b>Attention:</b> The <i>inLocal</i> and <i>calcLocalPref</i> attributes apply to routes in the Indb only. |                                                         |                                                                                                                                                           |



## Monitoring the BGP-4 MD5 Authentication

If a BGP Peer MD5 Authentication alarm is raised, the operator can isolate the source of the issue using the Peer operational attributes described in the following table:

- [BGP Peer operational attributes \(page 297\)](#)

You can display the attributes using the following command:

```
d -o Rtr/<rtr_id> Bgp Peer/<IP addr> Operational
```

During the key change transition, the counters will not increment so long as the packets received are authenticated with either the old key or the new key (including the cases where either the old or new key is the null key, implying a non-authenticated connection). Once both ends have exchanged packets authenticated with the new key, the counters will resume their normal behavior using only the currently provisioned key. Legitimate errors encountered during the key change transition will result in the counters incrementing as expected and alarms being generated as appropriate.

### BGP Peer operational attributes

| Attribute            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| authenticationType   | This attribute indicates which type of authentication is used on the TCP connection to the specified Peer. Values are none and md5.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| noAuthenticationPkts | This attribute indicates the number of TCP packets have been received from the specified Peer which were unauthenticated when authentication was expected. When this counter is increasing it could mean that the Peer is not configured to use authentication or a hacker is attempting to disrupt the BGP connection and is injecting unauthenticated packets. |
| (1 of 2)             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |



**BGP Peer operational attributes (continued)**

| <b>Attribute</b>             | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| badAuthenticationPkts        | This attribute indicates the number of TCP packets have been received from the specified Peer which were authenticated incorrectly. When this counter is increasing could mean that the Peer is configured with a different key or a hacker is attempting disrupt the BGP connection and is injecting packets authenticated using a different key.           |
| unexpectedAuthenticationPkts | This attribute indicates the number of TCP packets have been received from the specified Peer which were authenticated when authentication was not expected. When this counter is increasing it could mean that the Peer is configured to use authentication or a hacker is attempting to disrupt the BGP connection and is injecting authenticated packets. |
| (2 of 2)                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |



## Monitoring the static route configuration

The following tables describe how to lock and unlock, monitor the *Ip Static* component, the protected default route (PDR) heartbeat, and the nextHop of routes. Issue all commands in operational mode. See [Operational mode \(page 333\)](#).

- [Locking and unlocking the Ip Static component \(page 299\)](#)
- [Monitoring the Ip Static component \(page 299\)](#)
- [Monitoring the PDR \(page 299\)](#)
- [Monitoring the nextHop component of routes \(page 300\)](#)

### Locking and unlocking the Ip Static component

| Action                                                                             | Command                       | Legend                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Lock the <i>Ip Static</i> component to prevent routing over static routes          | lock Vr/<vr_name> Ip Static   | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |
| Unlock the <i>Ip Static</i> component to put it back into a service-providing role | unlock Vr/<vr_name> Ip Static |                                             |

### Monitoring the Ip Static component

| Action                                                   | Command                                               | Legend                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Display the <i>Ip Static</i> component route entries     | display -p Vr/<vr_name> Ip Static Route/*             | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |
| Display <i>Ip Static</i> component discard route entries | display -p Vr/<vr_name> Ip Static DiscardRouteEntry/* |                                             |

### Monitoring the PDR

| Action          | Command                                      | Legend                                      |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Display the PDR | display Vr/<vr_name> Ip Static Route/0.0.0.0 | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |



### Monitoring the nextHop component of routes

| Action                                              | Command                                                                 | Legend                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Display the <i>nextHop</i> component for the routes | <code>display Vr /&lt;vr_name&gt;<br/>Ip Static Route/*<br/>Nh/*</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |
|                                                     |                                                                         |                                             |

The *NextHop* component with the `operationalState` set to `enables` indicates this *nextHop* is reachable and a `usageState` set to `activate` indicates that this *nextHop* is used by this static route for forwarding. The *nextHop* will be enabled if the associated protocol port is up and ARP has succeeded.



## Monitoring the IP multicast configuration

The following tables describe how to lock and unlock, and monitor the *Ip Mcast* component. Issue all commands in operational mode. See [Operational mode \(page 333\)](#).

- [Monitoring IP multicast and IGMP \(page 301\)](#)
- [Monitoring PIM-SM \(page 301\)](#)

### Monitoring IP multicast and IGMP

| Action                                                     | Command                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Display the multicast cache.                               | Display Vr/<vr_name> Ip Mcast Cache/<n>           |
| Display the <i>Mcast</i> component operational statistics. | Display Vr/<vr_name> Ip Mcast                     |
| Display all configured static routes                       | Display Vr/<vr_name> Ip Mcast Static RouteEntry/* |
| Lock the <i>Mcast</i> component                            | Lock Vr/<vr_name> Ip Mcast                        |
| Unlock the <i>Mcast</i> component                          | Unlock Vr/<vr_name> Ip Mcast                      |
| Display the <i>Igmp</i> component operational statistics   | Display Vr/<vr_name> Ip Mcast Igmp                |
| Display the IGMP group cache                               | Display Vr/<vr_name> Ip Mcast Igmp Cache/*        |
| Lock the <i>Igmp</i> component                             | Lock Vr/<vr_name> Ip Mcast Igmp                   |
| Unlock the <i>Igmp</i> component                           | Unlock Vr/<vr_name> Ip Mcast Igmp                 |

### Monitoring PIM-SM

| Action                                                                                  | Command                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Display multicast forwarding table(s)                                                   | Display Vr/<vr_name> Ip Mcast Fwd/*            |
| Display the outbound interface table(s) for the forwarding table                        | Display Vr/<vr_name> Ip Mcast Fwd/* Oif/*      |
| Display a multicast PIM neighbor                                                        | Display Vr/<vr_name> Ip Mcast PimNbr/*         |
| Display the PIM-SM Bootstrap router (BSR) and other operational information in a domain | Display Vr/<vr_name> Ip Mcast PimSm Domain/<n> |

(1 of 2)



---

**Monitoring PIM-SM (continued)**

| <b>Action</b>                                | <b>Command</b>                                            |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Display a multicast PIM-SM domain and RP-Set | Display Vr/<vr_name> Ip Mcast<br>PimSm Domain/<n> RpSet/* |
| Lock the <i>PimSm</i> component              | Lock Vr/<vr_name> Ip Mcast<br>PimSm                       |
| Unlock the <i>PimSm</i> component            | Unlock Vr/<vr_name> Ip Mcast<br>PimSm                     |
| (2 of 2)                                     |                                                           |



## Monitoring the virtual router redundancy protocol configuration

This section contains the information you need to monitor and maintain the virtual router redundancy protocol (VRRP) configuration. Issue all commands in operational mode. See [Operational mode \(page 333\)](#).

For information on specific components and protocols, see the following sections:

- [Displaying VRRP operational information \(page 303\)](#)
- [Locking and unlocking the VRRP component \(page 303\)](#)

### Displaying VRRP operational information

You can display operational information about VRRP using the table [Displaying the VRRP operational information \(page 303\)](#).

#### Displaying the VRRP operational information

| Action                                                           | Command                                                                                     | Legend                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display the operational attribute defined by the VRRP component: | display Vr/<vrrp_router><br>Protocolport/<enet> IPport<br>Vrrp/<VRid><br>virtualRouterState | <vrrp_router> is the name of the Multiservice Switch node VR running VRRP.<br><br><VRid> is the instance of VRRP. |

### Locking and unlocking the VRRP component

The following section describes how to lock and unlock the VRRP component.

**Attention:** Lock and unlock of the VRRP component is not recommended on 4-port 10/100 BaseT Ethernet, 8-port 10/100BaseT Ethernet, and 4-port Gigabit Ethernet FPs. If you do proceed, you will receive the alarm 70211057, and the backup router starts acting as master. Both router status are updated accordingly, however, traffic will not failover.

Do not lock the protocol port since it does not cause a VRRP failover, but a disruption in traffic. For example: In the RFC 2764 model, do not lock VR PP to cause a VRRP failover. In the RFC 2547 model, do not lock RTR IF or RTR VRF IF to cause a VRRP failover.

If a VRRP failover is required, we recommend that you lock the associated LA, LA VLAN or LP ETH.



### Locking and unlocking the VRRP component

| Action                                                                                                                                | Command                                                              | Legend                                                                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lock a <i>Vrrp</i> component. Locking an active VRRP master router results in the VRRP backup router assuming the master router role. | lock vr/<vrrp_router><br>Protocolport/<enet> IPport<br>Vrrp/<VRid>   | <vrrp_router> is the name of the Multiservice Switch node VR running VRRP.<br><br><VRid> is the instance of VRRP. |
| Unlock a <i>Vrrp</i> component. Unlocking a designated master router results in return of the acting master to a backup state.        | unlock vr/<vrrp_router><br>Protocolport/<enet> IPport<br>Vrrp/<VRid> |                                                                                                                   |
|                                                                                                                                       |                                                                      |                                                                                                                   |



## Monitoring the IP CoS configuration

This section contains the information you need to monitor and maintain the IP CoS configuration. Issue all commands in operational mode. See [Operational mode \(page 333\)](#).

For information on specific components and protocols, see the following sections:

- [Using the ping command with IP CoS \(page 305\)](#)
- [Monitoring the IP CoS configuration \(page 305\)](#)

### Using the ping command with IP CoS

You can send an ICMP packet to a remote IP address with a specific CoS and ToS value. The table [Testing connectivity using the ICMP subcomponent \(page 278\)](#) specifies the commands you can use to test connectivity.

#### Using the ping command with IP CoS

| Action                                                             | Command                                               | Legend                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Send a ping packet with a Cos value to a specific IP address:      | ping -i(<ipaddr>) -cos(<cos>) Vr/<vr> Ip lcmp         | <ipaddr> is the remote IP address.<br><br><cos> is the CoS value for the packet, and a value of 0, 1, 2, or 3.<br><br><vr> is the instance identifier of the remote VR. |
| Send a ping packet with a TOS byte value to a specific IP address: | ping -i(<ipaddr>) -tos(<tos>) Vr/<vr> Ip lcmp         | <tos> is the hexadecimal ToS byte value for the packet.                                                                                                                 |
| Send a ping packet with a DSCP value to a specific IP address:     | ping -i(<ipaddr>) -dscp(<dscp_value>) Vr/<vr> Ip lcmp | <dscp_value> is the decimal DSCP value for the packet.                                                                                                                  |

### Monitoring the IP CoS configuration

The following section describes how to display configuration information and operational statistics for IP CoS.



### Monitoring IP CoS

| Action                                                                                                             | Command                                                                    | Legend                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display the configurable attributes for specific classification policies on ingress:                               | display -p Vr/<vr> Ip Pg/<br><grp> Policy/<plcy><br>TosMap                 | <plcy> is the instance identifier of the classification policy.    |
|                                                                                                                    | display -p Vr/<vr> Ip Pg/<br><grp> Policy/<plcy><br>IpAddrLayer4Flow/<flw> | <flw> is the instance identifier of the flow identification policy |
|                                                                                                                    | display -p Vr/<vr> Ip Pg/<br><grp><br>ingressCosTreatment/*                | <grp> is the instance identifier of the CoS policy group           |
| Display the configurable attributes for packet treatment profiles under a specific policy group applied on egress: | display -p Vr/<vr> Ip Pg/<br><grp><br>egressCosTreatment/*                 | <grp> is the instance identifier of the CoS policy group           |
| <b>Attention:</b> -p enables you to list provisionable components while in operational mode                        |                                                                            |                                                                    |



## Monitoring IP DiffServ configuration

Monitor IP DiffServ configuration to help you maintain and monitor your differentiated services configuration.

- [Confirming IP DiffServ interface profile usage \(page 308\)](#)
- [Confirming IP DiffServ interface profile configuration \(page 310\)](#)
- [Confirming connection class of connected media \(page 312\)](#)
- [Displaying per hop behaviors \(page 313\)](#)
- [Pinging ICMP with IP DiffServ \(page 315\)](#)

For more information on monitoring connected media see [Monitoring the ATM MPE configuration \(page 259\)](#) or [Monitoring the Arp subcomponent \(page 282\)](#).



## Confirming IP DiffServ interface profile usage

Confirm IP DiffServ interface profile usage to verify how differentiated services have been deployed.

### Prerequisites

- You must have completed the procedure IP DiffServ configuration in NN10600-809 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Layer 3 Traffic Management Configuration*.
- See NN10600-800 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP Technology Fundamentals* for more information on differentiated services.
- See NN10600-060 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Component Reference* for more information on the components and attributes used in this procedure.

### Procedure steps

- 1 Display the subcomponents that are linked to differentiated services.

```
d -p Vr/<vr_name> Ip Ds <ds_inst> linkToDiffServUsers
```

- 2 Display the differentiated services the lport is using.

```
d -o Vr/<vr_name> Pp/<pp_name> ipPort  
operDiffServAssignment
```

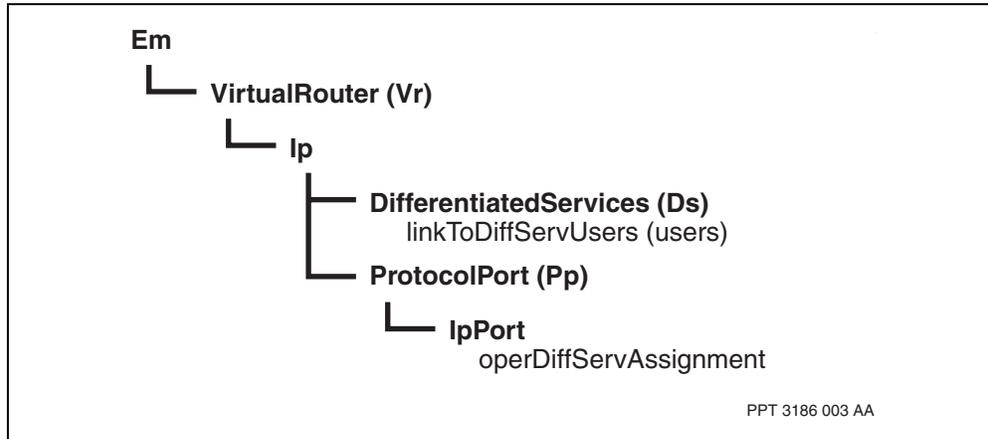
### Variable values

| Variable  | Value                                   |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------|
| <vr_name> | The name of the virtual router.         |
| <ds_inst> | The instance of the DiffServ component. |
| <pp_name> | The name of the protocol port.          |
|           |                                         |



---

**Procedure job aid**  
**Confirming IP DiffServ interface profile usage component hierarchy**





## Confirming IP DiffServ interface profile configuration

Confirm IP DiffServ interface profile configuration to verify that the DSCP treatments and discard priority have been configured correctly.

### Prerequisites

- You must have completed the procedure IP DiffServ configuration in NN10600-809 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Layer 3 Traffic Management Configuration*.
- You must have completed the procedure Adding an IP DiffServ interface profile to a virtual router in NN10600-809 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Layer 3 Traffic Management Configuration*
- See NN10600-800 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP Technology Fundamentals* for more information on differentiated services.
- See NN10600-060 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Component Reference* for more information on the components and attributes used in this procedure.

### Procedure steps

- 1 Display the ingress services.

```
d vr/<vr_name> Ip Ds/<ds_inst> Is
```

- 2 Display the behavior aggregate components of the ingress services.

```
d vr/<vr_name> Ip Ds/<ds_inst> Is Ba/*
```

- 3 Display the egress services.

```
d Vr/<vr_name> Ip Ds/<ds_inst> Es
```

- 4 Display the behavior aggregate components of the egress services.

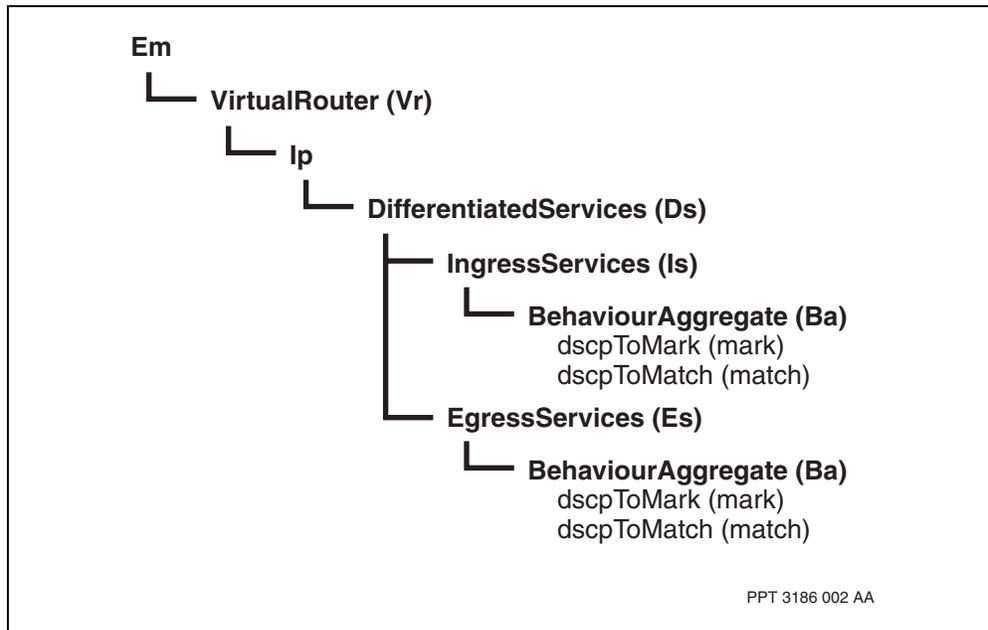
```
d vr/<vr_name> Ip Ds/<ds_inst> Es Ba/*
```

### Variable values

| Variable  | Value                                   |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------|
| <vr_name> | The name of the virtual router.         |
| <ds_inst> | The instance of the DiffServ component. |
|           |                                         |



**Procedure job aid**  
**Confirming DiffServ configuration component hierarchy**





### Confirming connection class of connected media

Confirm the connection class of connected media to verify that the connection class values specified by *AtmMpe Ac ipCos* matches the connection class value of the connected media.

#### Prerequisites

- You must have completed the procedure IP DiffServ configuration in NN10600-809 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Layer 3 Traffic Management Configuration*.
- See NN10600-800 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP Technology Fundamentals* for more information on differentiated services.
- See NN10600-060 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Component Reference* for more information on the components and attributes used in this procedure.

#### Procedure steps

- 1 Display information for all the dynamic host entries.

```

d Vr/<vr_name> Ip Arp DynHost/*

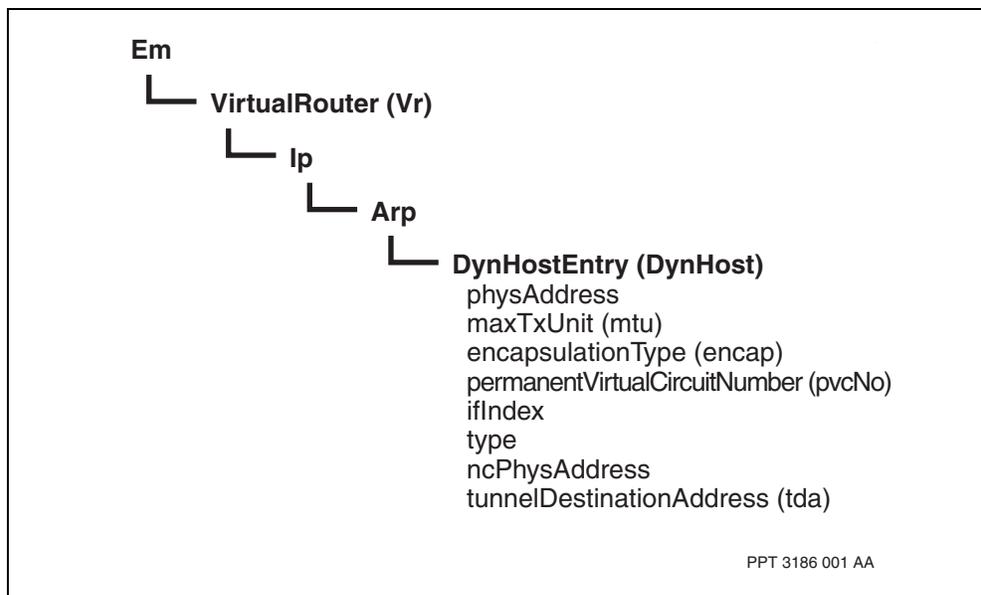
```

#### Variable values

| Variable  | Value                           |
|-----------|---------------------------------|
| <vr_name> | The name of the virtual router. |
|           |                                 |

#### Procedure job aid

##### Confirming connection class of connected media component hierarchy





## Displaying per hop behaviors

Display per hop behaviors (PHB) to verify that each PHB is delivering the proper treatment to the IP packets.

### Prerequisites

- You must have completed the procedure IP DiffServ configuration in NN10600-809 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Layer 3 Traffic Management Configuration*.
- See NN10600-800 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP Technology Fundamentals* for more information on differentiated services.
- See NN10600-060 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Component Reference* for more information on the components and attributes used in this procedure.

### Procedure steps

- 1 Display the per hop behaviors for the differentiated services domain.

```
d -o Vr/<vr_name> Dsd/<domain_type> Phb/*
```

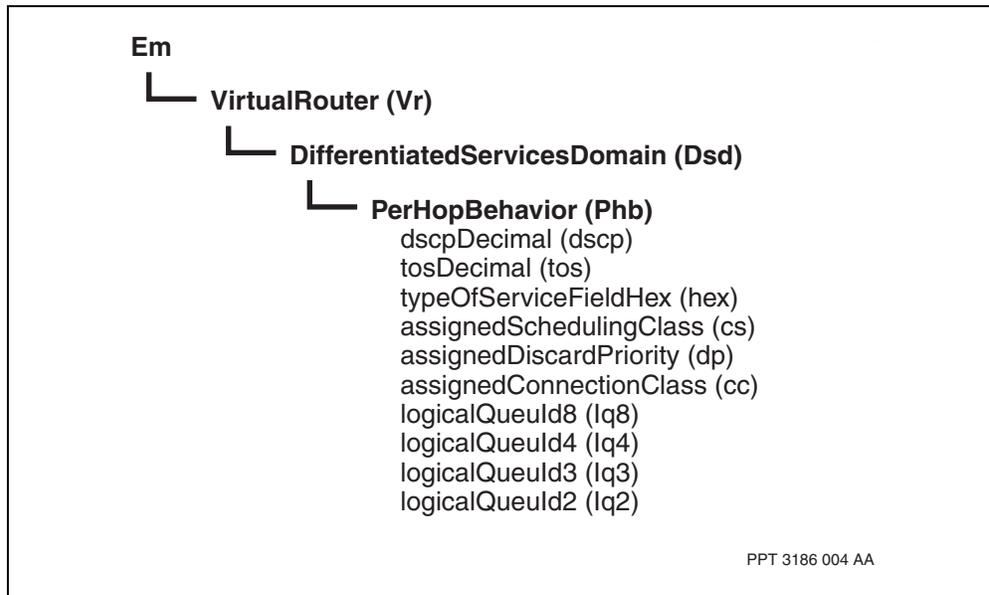
### Variable values

| Variable      | Value                           |
|---------------|---------------------------------|
| <vr_name>     | The name of the virtual router  |
| <domain_type> | The type of IP DiffServ domain. |
|               |                                 |



---

**Procedure job aid**  
**Displaying per hop behaviors component hierarchy**





## Pinging ICMP with IP DiffServ

Ping ICMP with IP DiffServ to determine the time it takes for a packet to travel to an address in the network.

### Prerequisites

- You must complete the procedure Adding a DiffServ domain to the virtual router in NN10600-809 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Layer 3 Traffic Management Configuration*
- See NN10600-800 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 IP Technology Fundamentals* for more information on differentiated services.
- See NN10600-060 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Component Reference* for more information on the components and attributes used in this procedure.

### Procedure steps

- 1 Ping an IP address with a specified DSCP value.

```
ping -i(<ip_addr>) -dscp (<dscp_value>) Vr/<vr_name> Ip  
Icmp
```

- 2 Ping an IP address with a specified TOS value.

```
ping -i(<ip_addr>) -tos (<tos_value>) Vr/<vr_name> Ip  
Icmp
```

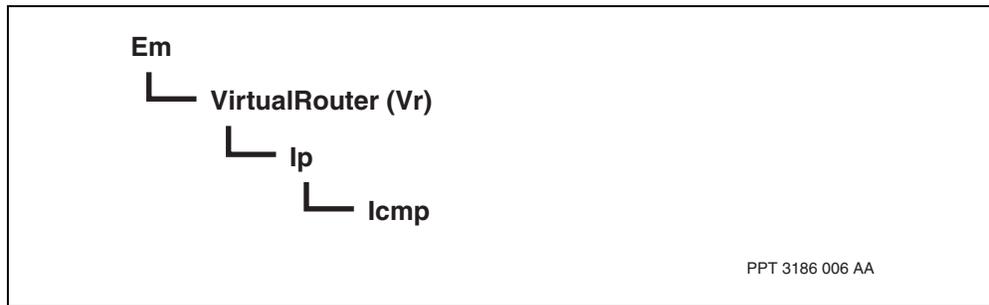
### Variable values

| Variable     | Value                                                                    |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ip_addr>    | The IP address you want to ping.                                         |
| <dscp_value> | The decimal DSCP value you want to mark in the IP packet header.         |
| <tos_value>  | The hexadecimal ToS byte value you want to mark in the IP packet header. |
| <vr_name>    | The name of the virtual router                                           |



---

**Procedure job aid**  
**Pinging ICMP with IP DiffServ component hierarchy**





## Monitoring the IP flow filters configuration

You can perform the tests described in this section to determine if you have configured IP flow filters properly. Issue all commands in operational mode. See [Operational mode \(page 333\)](#). For more information, see the following sections:

- [Monitoring the filter component \(page 317\)](#)
- [Monitoring the filterFlow subcomponent \(page 317\)](#)

### Monitoring the filter component

The following section describes how to display operational statistics for the *filter* component. For more information, see the table [Monitoring the IP cache subcomponent \(page 277\)](#).

#### Monitoring the filter component

| Action                                                                           | Command                                      | Legend                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| List all <i>filter</i> component instances                                       | list Vr/<vr_name> Ip filter/*                | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |
| List all subcomponents of particular <i>filter</i> component instance            | list Vr/<vr_name> Ip filter/<filter_name>    | <filter_name> is the name of the filter     |
| Display operational statistics for a particular <i>filter</i> component instance | display Vr/<vr_name> Ip filter/<filter_name> |                                             |

### Monitoring the filterFlow subcomponent

The following section describes how to display operational statistics for the *filterFlow* subcomponent. For more information, see the table [Monitoring the filterFlow subcomponent \(page 317\)](#).

#### Monitoring the filterFlow subcomponent

| Action                                     | Command                                       | Legend                                      |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| List all <i>filter</i> component instances | list Vr/<vr_name> Ip filter/* Ip FilterFlow/* | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router |
| (1 of 2)                                   |                                               |                                             |



**Monitoring the filterFlow subcomponent (continued)**

| <b>Action</b>                                                                           | <b>Command</b>                                                                         | <b>Legend</b>                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| List all subcomponents of particular <i>filterFlow</i> subcomponent instance            | list Vr/<vr_name> Ip filter/<br><filter_name> Ip FilterFlow/<br><filterflow_number>    | <filter_name> is the name of the filter<br><filterflow_number> is the number of the flow filter |
| Display operational statistics for a particular <i>filterFlow</i> subcomponent instance | display Vr/<vr_name> Ip filter/<br><filter_name> Ip FilterFlow/<br><filterflow_number> |                                                                                                 |
| (2 of 2)                                                                                |                                                                                        |                                                                                                 |



## Monitoring the IP tunnel configuration

This section contains the information you need to monitor and maintain the IP tunnel configuration. Issue all commands in operational mode. See [Operational mode \(page 333\)](#).

- [Locking and unlocking the Tunnel component \(page 319\)](#)
- [Monitoring the Tunnel component \(page 320\)](#)
- [Monitoring the ProtocolPort component for an IP tunnel \(page 320\)](#)
- [Monitoring the IpPort component for an IP tunnel \(page 320\)](#)
- [Monitoring the Logically component for an IP tunnel \(page 321\)](#)

### Locking and unlocking the Tunnel component

| Action                                                                                      | Command                             | Legend                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lock the <i>Ip Tunnel</i> component to take it and all related subcomponents out of service | lock Vr/<vr_name><br>Pp/<pp_name>   | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router<br><br><pp_name> is the name of the protocol port |
| Unlock the <i>Ip Tunnel</i> component to return it all related subcomponents to service     | unlock Vr/<vr_name><br>Pp/<pp_name> |                                                                                               |
| Lock all instances of IP tunnel end points for this instance of the <i>Vr</i> component     | lock Vr/<vr_name> Ip Tunnel         |                                                                                               |
| Unlock all instances of IP tunnel end points for this instance of the <i>Vr</i> component   | unlock Vr/<vr_name><br>Ip Tunnel    |                                                                                               |



### Monitoring the Tunnel component

| Action                                                                                      | Command                                                                                            | Legend |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Display configurable attributes for the <i>Tunnel</i> component                             | <code>display -p Vr/<br/>&lt;vr_name&gt; Tunnel<br/>StaticEndPoint/<br/>&lt;endpoint_id&gt;</code> |        |
| Display operational statistics for the <i>Tunnel</i> component                              | <code>display Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt;<br/>Tunnel<br/>StaticEndPoint/<br/>&lt;endpoint_id&gt;</code>     |        |
| <b>Attention:</b> -p enables you to list provisionable components while in operational mode |                                                                                                    |        |

### Monitoring the ProtocolPort component for an IP tunnel

| Action                                                                                      | Command                                                                 | Legend                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display configurable attributes for the tunnel <i>ProtocolPort</i> component                | <code>display -p Vr/<br/>&lt;vr_name&gt; Pp/<br/>&lt;pp_name&gt;</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router<br><br><pp_name> is the name of the protocol port |
| Display operational attributes for the tunnel <i>ProtocolPort</i> component                 | <code>display Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt;<br/>Pp/&lt;pp_name&gt;</code>          |                                                                                               |
| <b>Attention:</b> -p enables you to list provisionable components while in operational mode |                                                                         |                                                                                               |

### Monitoring the IpPort component for an IP tunnel

| Action                                                                                      | Command                                                                        | Legend                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display configurable attributes for the tunnel <i>IpPort</i> component                      | <code>display -p Vr/<br/>&lt;vr_name&gt; Pp/<br/>&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort</code> | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router<br><br><pp_name> is the name of the protocol port |
| Display operational attributes for the tunnel <i>IpPort</i> component                       | <code>display -p Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt;<br/>Pp/&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort</code>       |                                                                                               |
| <b>Attention:</b> -p enables you to list provisionable components while in operational mode |                                                                                |                                                                                               |



### Monitoring the LogicalIf component for an IP tunnel

| Action                                                                                      | Command                                                                                                      | Legend                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display configurable attributes for the <i>LogicalIf</i> component                          | <code>display -p Vr/<br/>&lt;vr_name&gt; Pp/<br/>&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort<br/>LogicalIf/&lt;ip_addr&gt;</code> | <pp_name> is the name of the tunnel protocol port.<br><br><ip_addr> is the IP address of the IP logical interface. |
| Display operational attributes for the <i>LogicalIf</i> component                           | <code>display Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Pp/<br/>&lt;pp_name&gt; IpPort<br/>LogicalIf/&lt;ip_address&gt;</code>      |                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Attention:</b> -p enables you to list provisionable components while in operational mode |                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                    |
|                                                                                             |                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                    |



## Monitoring IP CPP on the VR

Perform the tests described in this section to determine if you have configured control plane protection (CPP) properly. Issue all commands in operational mode. See [Operational mode \(page 333\)](#). For more information, see the following sections:

- [Determining if traffic is isolated \(page 322\)](#)
- [Restoring traffic for isolated DAs \(page 322\)](#)

### Determining if traffic is isolated

Use the following table to determine if any destination address (DA) on the VRs is currently being isolated.

#### Determining if traffic is isolated

| Action                                     | Command                                                  | Legend                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display all <i>Cpp</i> component instances | <code>display Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip cpp</code>           | <code>&lt;vr_name&gt;</code> is the name of the virtual router |
| List the DAs that are being isolated       | <code>list Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt; Ip cpp isolatedDa/*</code> |                                                                |
|                                            |                                                          |                                                                |

If the *monitoringState* is *isolating* then CPP protection is in effect. The count of how many DAs on the VR are currently isolated is contained in *isolatedDACount*. If a DA is isolated on more than one FP, all instances are counted.

If *isolationTime* is zero, control plane traffic will only be restored on the VR through operator intervention.

### Restoring traffic for isolated DAs

Use the following table to determine how to manually stop and restore VR control.



---

**Restoring traffic for isolated DAs**

| <b>Action</b>                                                        | <b>Command</b>                                                                                    | <b>Legend</b>                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| If CPP is currently isolating DAs, restore control traffic to the VR | <code>clear Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt;</code><br><code>Ip cpp</code>                                      | <vr_name> is the name of the virtual router                            |
| Restore traffic to single DA                                         | <code>clear Vr/&lt;vr_name&gt;</code><br><code>Ip cpp isolatedDa/&lt;da&gt;, &lt;lpnum&gt;</code> | <da> is the destination address<br><br><lpnum> is the number of the LP |
|                                                                      |                                                                                                   |                                                                        |



---

# Troubleshooting

---

This section contains information about the following:

- [Troubleshooting ATM MPE \(page 325\)](#)
- [Troubleshooting frame relay DTE \(page 327\)](#)
- [Troubleshooting PPP \(page 328\)](#)
- [Troubleshooting PPP/ATM interworking \(page 332\)](#)



## Troubleshooting ATM MPE

The table [Handling problems with ATM MPE \(page 325\)](#) provides guidelines on how to respond to problems that might occur when using the ATM MPE service.

### Handling problems with ATM MPE

| Problem                                                                                                              | Possible cause                                                                                                                                                                        | Solution                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ATM MPE does not provide service.                                                                                    | The ATM MPE interface is locked.                                                                                                                                                      | Unlock the <i>AtmMpe</i> component.                                         |
|                                                                                                                      | The ATM MPE <i>AtmConnection</i> is locked.                                                                                                                                           | Unlock the <i>AtmMpe AtmConnection</i> component.                           |
|                                                                                                                      | The <i>ifAdminStatus</i> of the ATM MPE VCC is down.                                                                                                                                  | Configure the <i>ifAdminStatus</i> as up.                                   |
|                                                                                                                      | The ILS Forwarder interface is locked                                                                                                                                                 | Unlock the <i>ilsFwdr</i> component.                                        |
|                                                                                                                      | The <i>ifAdminStatus</i> of the ILS Forwarder interface is down                                                                                                                       | Configure the <i>ifAdminStatus</i> as up.                                   |
|                                                                                                                      | The ATM FP or ATM port is locked.                                                                                                                                                     | Unlock the ATM FP or ATM port.                                              |
| IP over ATM MPE is not functioning.                                                                                  | The encapsulation type for the <i>AtmMpe</i> component is <i>ipVcEncap</i> , and there are no static ARP entries provisioned.                                                         | Change the encapsulation type to <i>llcEncap</i> or add static ARP entries. |
|                                                                                                                      | The ARP table has been cleared. This flushes all inverse ARP entries (these are not supplied dynamically).                                                                            | Lock and unlock the <i>AtmMpe</i> component.                                |
|                                                                                                                      | The encapsulation type used by the ATM MPE interfaces at each end of a VCC is not consistent. Both <i>AtmMpe</i> instances that terminate a VCC must use the same encapsulation type. | Configure both ends of the VCC to use the same encapsulation type.          |
|                                                                                                                      | IP is not on the feature list of the ILS Forwarder FP.                                                                                                                                | Add IP to the ILS Forwarder FP feature list.                                |
| An instance of the <i>AtmMpe</i> component is disabled, but not locked, and the <i>ilsFwdr</i> component is enabled. | The ATM MPE feature is not in the feature list for the ATM FP.                                                                                                                        | Add the ATM MPE feature to the ATM software feature list.                   |
| (1 of 2)                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                             |



---

**Handling problems with ATM MPE (continued)**

| <b>Problem</b>                           | <b>Possible cause</b>                                                                                                                                         | <b>Solution</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The ATM MPE soft PVC fails to establish. | The called endpoint is either busy or does not exist.                                                                                                         | Correct the <i>remoteAddress</i> and <i>remoteCi</i> attributes for the <i>SrcPvc</i> component. Make sure that only one calling endpoint in the ATM network is trying to connect to the called endpoint. For more information on the <i>lastClearCause</i> attribute, see NN10600-715 <i>Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 ATM Fault and Performance Management</i> . |
|                                          | There is a link, node, or routing failure somewhere in the PNNI network. You can tell that this is the case because the <i>lastClearCause</i> will not be 34. | Use the <i>lastClearCause</i> to diagnose the problem.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

(2 of 2)



## Troubleshooting frame relay DTE

The table [Handling problems with frame relay DTE \(page 327\)](#) provides guidelines on how to respond to problems that might occur when using the frame relay DTE service.

### Handling problems with frame relay DTE

| Problem                                          | Possible cause                                                                                                                                    | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Data transfer over all connections is suspended. | The number of local management interface (LMI) procedure errors within the last monitoredEvents window has exceeded the threshold errorThreshold. | Verify that the network equipment has the LMI protocol enabled.                                                                                                                                |
|                                                  |                                                                                                                                                   | Verify that the LMI parameters set on the network equipment are compatible with those on the router.                                                                                           |
|                                                  |                                                                                                                                                   | Turn off the LMI protocol for the frame relay DTE if the network equipment does not support any of the available LMI protocols. Do this by setting the attribute of the LMI component to none. |



## Troubleshooting PPP

The table [Handling problems with PPP \(page 328\)](#) provides guidelines on how to respond to problems that might occur when using the PPP service.

### Handling problems with PPP

| Problem                                                                               | Possible cause                                                                                                          | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The link does not come up. Link Control Protocol (LCP) cannot enter the "open" state. | There is incorrect provisioning data.                                                                                   | Make sure that both ends of the link have compatible provisioning data.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                                                                                       | There is a bad cable or cables.                                                                                         | Test cables using port and line tests and remove bad cables. Look at the <i>lineCondition</i> attribute in the <i>Ppp/n Link</i> component and make sure the line is correct.                                                                                     |
|                                                                                       | There has been an operator error.                                                                                       | Check the physical layer attributes to ensure that essential components have not been locked.                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                                       | There is no clock from the modem or peer DCE connection.                                                                | Check the physical layer statistics to see if the physical layer is operational and ready to provide link service to the PPP application.                                                                                                                         |
|                                                                                       | Peer link is not initiating the LCP configure request transmission or not responding with an LCP configure acknowledge. | Check <i>Ppp/n Link operState</i> attribute to determine the state of the LCP connection. If it is in <i>reqsent</i> then the PPP is trying to connect and there must be something wrong with the physical link connection, or the peer PPP is not talking to us. |
| (1 of 4)                                                                              |                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |



**Handling problems with PPP (continued)**

| <b>Problem</b>                                                                      | <b>Possible cause</b>                                                 | <b>Solution</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The link does not come up. Link Control Protocol (LCP) cannot enter the open state. | The quality of the connection may be poor.                            | If LQM is turned on, then a Bad Line Quality alarm may be set. This can happen only after the <i>Ppp/n Link operState</i> attribute is open.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                                                                     | LCP packets are not getting through to or from peer PPP connection.   | Look at the <i>Ppp/n Framers</i> statistics of both sides of the link and confirm that there are no CRC errors etc. Look at the ifTable for the physical layer component such as V.35 or DS1 etc. Also look at <i>Ppp/n Link</i> attributes to see if PPP is receiving frames that are either too long, too short, or badly formed frames.                                           |
|                                                                                     | There is a remote MRRU or endpoint discriminator mismatch.            | Look at the <i>lineCondition</i> attribute under the <i>PPP/n MlpppFramer MlpppLink/y</i> subcomponent. If the value is set to misconfigured then either a MRRU or an endpoint discriminator mismatch has occurred. Check the remote end of the physical cable to ensure it is connected to the same equipment as the other physical connection under the <i>PPP/n MlpppFramer</i> . |
| The <i>bundleSpeed</i> attribute does not match the number of links in the bundle.  | The physical link is down. The link is not correctly added to bundle. | Check the physical layer to ensure that it is functional. Verify that all links are correctly configured to join the bundle.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| (2 of 4)                                                                            |                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |



**Handling problems with PPP (continued)**

| <b>Problem</b>                                                                                                                                 | <b>Possible cause</b>                                                                                                                                                                                               | <b>Solution</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A Network Control Protocol (NCP) does not enter the open state.                                                                                | The network layer protocol is not provisioned on either the local or peer shelf.                                                                                                                                    | Check the provisioning of the network layer protocol on each side of the connection. Look at the <i>ppp/n ncp state</i> attributes for the protocol to help determine which side does not want to connect.                                                                                   |
|                                                                                                                                                | The peer PPP application does not want to open the NCP in question.                                                                                                                                                 | Check peer connection and confirm that the network layer protocol does indeed want to connect to the PPP.                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| The link connection keeps going down due to bad line quality.<br><br>(Note this can only occur when Link Quality Monitoring (LQM) is enabled.) | The link quality could be bad.                                                                                                                                                                                      | Either take measures to improve link quality, or set the quality threshold down in the <i>ppp/n link qualityThreshold</i> attribute. Check for CRC errors on both sides of the connection.                                                                                                   |
|                                                                                                                                                | The PPP connection may be over-driving the peer's link, or the peer may be over-driving the side of the link resulting in dropped data or LQM reporting packets. This typically happens only at DS3/E3 link speeds. | Disable LQM or throttle the network layer applications data rate.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                                                                                                                                | The reporting period for link quality reports is set for too short a period for the data rate being used.                                                                                                           | Set the <i>ppp/n lqm configPeriod</i> attribute to 100 centiseconds or set the period to zero (default) and allow the period to be determined by the peer or set the value to something over 180,000 centiseconds which allows the reporting period to be calculated based on the data rate. |
| (3 of 4)                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |



**Handling problems with PPP (continued)**

| <b>Problem</b>                                                                                                                                                          | <b>Possible cause</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <b>Solution</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>The link connection keeps going down due to bad line quality.<br/><br/>(Note that this can only occur when Link Quality Monitoring (LQM) is enabled.)</p>            | <p>The window size may be too small. This is the interval of time during which samples may be accumulated. The window may be provisioned such that very bursty traffic results in an erroneous quality determination.</p>                                                                                                                                                                               | <p>Set the ppp/n link qualityWindow to a larger value. Typically the 30 second default should be fine for all applications.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                         | <p>The peer PPP connection might not be sending Link Quality Reports (LQRs).</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | <p>Check the ppp/n inLqrs counter. If it is not incrementing, the peer PPP application is not responding correctly to LQM.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <p>The link connection keeps going down due to loss of link continuity.<br/><br/>(Note that this can only happen when Link Continuity Monitoring (LCM) is enabled.)</p> | <p>The link quality could be bad.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <p>Improve link quality. Check for CRC or any other errors in the physical layer statistics on both sides of the link.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                         | <p>The PPP connection may be over driving the peer's link, or the peer may be over driving the side of the link resulting in dropped LCM packets. This typically only happens at DS3/E3 link speeds.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                | <p>Disable LCM or throttle the network layer applications data rate.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <p>Network layer traffic gets dropped when bursts of data occur.</p>                                                                                                    | <p>The congestion threshold of the link interface is being reached forcing packets to be discarded. Check PPPs ifTable to determine if the ifOutDiscards counter is incrementing.<br/><br/>DS3/E3 link speeds may use the direct hardware transmit method. As a result, ifOutDiscards are not incremented when congestion thresholds are reached because congestion management is done in hardware.</p> | <p>On a Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400 node with SBIC-based FPs, add an LEQ to the PPP application. This allows more elasticity in the data path for bursty traffic conditions.<br/><br/>Adding an LEQ turns off direct hardware transmit because all packets are processed by the outbound FP running the LEQ code.</p> |
| (4 of 4)                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |



## Troubleshooting PPP/ATM interworking

The table [Handling problems with PPP/ATM interworking \(page 332\)](#) provides guidelines on how to respond to problems that might occur when using PPP/ATM interworking.

### Handling problems with PPP/ATM interworking

| Problem                                                                                                                     | Possible cause                                                                                                                                 | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SPVC does not establish.                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                | Check the <i>Ppplwf</i> status and the <i>Atmlf</i> port status.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| The port state is enabled and busy                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                | Verify the <i>lastStepFailureCause</i> . For example, if this attribute is set to 3 and has no route to destination, PNNI cannot find the route to the destination node. Another possible cause is that the Ppplwf feature is not loaded on the ATM FP configured with PNNI. |
| OSPF is in exchange mode on PPP and at the <i>AtmMpe</i> end.                                                               |                                                                                                                                                | Check that the static ARP entry is added to the <i>AtmMpe</i> end.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <i>Piwf AtmAp Spvc</i> does not stage (terminate on the same node as <i>Piwf</i> component) and complains of cause code 47. | The <i>ppplwf</i> or <i>mlppplwf</i> features are not in the feature list of the FP that the ATM traffic is destined for.                      | Ensure that the feature is correctly configured in the destination ATM FP <i>Sw Lpt</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Traffic is not forwarded out of the node when the <i>Piwf AtmAp</i> connection terminates downstream.                       | The <i>Ppplwf</i> or <i>mlppplwf</i> features are not in the feature list of the FP that is responsible for forwarding traffic off the switch. | Ensure that the feature is correctly configured in the <i>Sw Lpt</i> of the ATM FP that forwards traffic.                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |



---

## Procedure conventions

---

This document uses the following procedure conventions:

- You can enter commands using full component and attribute names, or you can abbreviate them. The commands used in the procedures contain the full component and attribute names in the first instance. In the second instance, the component and attribute names are abbreviated. For more information on abbreviating component and attribute names, see NN10600-060 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Component Reference*. All component and attribute names are formatted in italics.
- The introduction of every procedure states whether you must perform the procedure in operational mode or provisioning mode. For more information on these modes, see [Operational mode \(page 333\)](#) or [Provisioning mode \(page 334\)](#).
- When you complete a procedure, you can verify your changes and then activate them as the new node configuration. For more information on completing configuration changes and exiting provisioning mode, see [Activating configuration changes \(page 334\)](#).

### Operational mode

Procedures contained within this document can either be performed in operational mode or provisioning mode. When you initially log into a node, you are in operational mode. Nortel Multiservice Switch systems use the following command prompt when you are in operational mode:

```
#>
```

where:

# is the current command number

In operational mode, you work with operational components and attributes. In operational mode, you can

- list operational components and display operational attributes to determine the current operating parameters for the node
- control the state of parts of the node by locking and unlocking components



- set certain operational attributes and enter commands to perform diagnostic tests

## Provisioning mode

To change from operational mode to provisioning mode, type the following command at the operator prompt:

```
start Prov
```

Only one user can be in provisioning mode at a time. Nortel Multiservice Switch systems use the following command prompt whenever you are in provisioning mode:

```
PROV #>
```

where:

# is the current command number

In provisioning mode, you work with the provisionable components and attributes that contain the current and future configurations of the node. You can add and delete components, and display and set provisionable attributes. For information on completing the configuration changes, exiting provisioning mode, and returning to operational mode see [Activating configuration changes \(page 334\)](#).

For information on operational and provisionable attributes, see NN10600-060 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Component Reference*.

## Activating configuration changes

Several procedures in this document ask that you complete the configuration changes. When you complete the configuration changes, you are activating the configuration changes, confirming that you want to activate them, and saving the changes. You are instructed to complete the configuration changes only at the end of procedures that you perform in provisioning mode.



### CAUTION

#### Activating a provisioning view can affect service

Activating a provisioning view can result in a CP reload or restart, causing all services on the node to fail. See NN10600-050 *Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000 Command Reference*, for more information.



**CAUTION**

**Risk of service failure**

When you activate the provisioning changes (see [step 3](#)), you have 20 minutes to confirm these changes. If you do not confirm these changes within 20 minutes, the shelf resets and all services on the node fail.

- 1 Verify that the provisioning changes you have made are acceptable.

**check Prov**

Correct any errors and then verify the provisioning changes again.

- 2 If you want to store the provisioning changes in a file, save the provisioning view.

**save -f(<filename>) Prov**

- 3 If you want these changes as well as other changes made in the edit view to take effect immediately, activate, confirm, and commit the provisioning changes.

**activate Prov**

**confirm Prov**

**commit Prov**

- 4 End the provisioning session.

**end Prov**



Nortel Multiservice Switch 7400/15000/20000  
**IP Configuration Management**

Copyright © 2006 Nortel.  
All Rights Reserved.

Publication: NN10600-801  
Document status: Standard  
Document issue: 7.2S2  
Document date: April 2006  
Product release: PCR7.2 and up  
Job function: Operations  
Type: NTP  
Language type: U.S. English

NORTEL, the globemark design, and the NORTEL corporate logo are trademarks of Nortel.

